



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Educ T1118.92.475

HARVARD UNIVERSITY

---

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

---

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

RED

COLLEGE

Y



3 2044 102 850 138







2023

# GREEK LESSONS.

*PREPARED TO ACCOMPANY THE GRAMMAR OF  
HADLEY AND ALLEN.*

BY  
ROBERT P. KEEP.

REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK .:. CINCINNATI .:. CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

~~T 110-5558~~

✓ Educ T 1118.92.475

**Harvard University,  
Dept. of Education Library**

TRANSFERRED TO  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

June 12, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1885, 1886,  
BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY.

COPYRIGHT, 1892,  
BY AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

Printed by  
D. Appleton & Company  
New York, U. S. A.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE Greek Grammar of Hadley and Allen has won for itself the position of a standard Manual of the Greek language, and is widely recognized as a book which every American student of Greek should possess. The only question is whether it should be purchased at the very outset or whether a beginning should be made with a smaller and less complete grammar, this latter to give place after a year or two to the fuller treatise. The writer believes that there is a great advantage in commencing, at the start, the study of that grammatical manual which will serve the student until the very end; and it was in the hope of making the path to the acquaintance with the New Hadley clear, sure, and not unnecessarily difficult, that he was induced, more than two years ago, to undertake the preparation of these Lessons.

The Lessons are intended to serve as a companion and guide to the Grammar; in no sense to supersede it or to take its place. The Paradigms will therefore usually be learned in the Grammar, yet, for

the advantage of the beginner, some of the earlier paradigms have been given entire in the Lessons. In every such case, the paradigms are printed in the same type and arrangement as in the Grammar, and the student should be required to refer to them (in the Grammar), and to mark them there. The Rules of Syntax are introduced as the need for them occurs, are always stated in the language of the Grammar, and the section number, indicating where each is found, is added at the right-hand margin. In the Exercises, the editor has not confined himself absolutely to Xenophontic words. He has not infrequently introduced sentences which might occur in the conversation of to-day, and has occasionally inserted passages from the New Testament and from the Septuagint version of the Old Testament. To some the earlier vocabularies may seem short and the earlier sentences scanty. This feature is due to the writer's sense of the importance of concentrating the pupil's first effort upon the study of grammatical forms. A very few words and a half-dozen phrases well learned each day are far more useful to the beginner than twice that number written out at great expense of time and then forgotten. Much thought has been given to the order in which the different grammatical topics have been taken up. The constant aim has been to present difficulties, one at a time, and to lodge each new principle firmly in the pupil's mind, before passing to another. Hence arises

the postponement of the Third Declension, and of other Tense-Systems than the Present, to a later point than is usual. Hence, also, the presentation of the common and *-μι* verb-formations side by side, that the pupil may not get the erroneous idea that the second is something exceptional or radically different from the first.

It is recommended that the grammar sections indicated at the head of each lesson be carefully and distinctly marked in the Grammar. The pupil will thus construct for himself, as he progresses through the Lessons, a Skeleton Grammar, and this abridged grammar he will have completely learned when the Lessons shall have been finished.

The various Appendixes will explain themselves, as will likewise the introduction of a portion of the *Anabasis* as the foundation of the last thirteen lessons. The transition from the disconnected sentences of most elementary books to the connected narrative of Xenophon is extremely difficult. The plan here employed will, it is hoped, diminish the difficulty of this transition.

Suggestions from every quarter will be most thankfully received.

ROBERT PORTER KEEP.

FREE ACADEMY,  
NORWICH, CONN., *July, 1886.*





## PREFATORY NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

---

THE changes in this edition are almost wholly in the vocabularies. A considerable number of deficiencies has been supplied, and the editor wishes to thank Professor J. H. Perrin, of Crawfordsville, Indiana, Dr. Charles Knapp, of Barnard College, Mr. O. C. Joline, and Mr. E. G. Dodge, for the corrections and suggestions which they have kindly communicated.

The editor realizes that not all teachers will wish to require the same amount of grammatical work from their pupils. He has aimed to give, in the references which form the headings to the lessons, a sufficient amount of grammar to form a complete preparation for the intelligent reading of the Anabasis. Different teachers will of course use their own judgment as to how much of this grammatical matter they will require their pupils to learn, and how much only to read.

ROBERT P. KEEP.

NORWICH, CONN., *August, 1892.*



# CONTENTS.

---

LESSON	PAGE
I. The Letters ; their Forms and Sounds . . . . .	1
II. Vowels and their classification.—Diphthongs.—Breathings	2
III. Consonants and their classification . . . . .	4
IV. Division into Syllables—Ultima, Penult, Antepenult.— Quantity . . . . .	5
V. Accent.—Present Indicative Active of γράφω . . . . .	6
VI. Accent as affected by quantity.—Punctuation.—Present Indicative Active of φημί . . . . .	7
VII. First Declension.—Χώρα and τιμή declined.—Present In- dicative Active of εἰμί . . . . .	9
VIII. Γέφυρα and γλώσσα declined.—Two classes of Feminines .	11
IX. First Declension concluded. Νεανίας and πολίτης . . . .	12
X. Second Declension . . . . .	14
XI. Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.—Article.—Attribu- tion and Predication . . . . .	15
XII. Review Lesson on Accent . . . . .	18
XIII. Contracted Nouns and Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension	21
XIV. Imperfect Indicative Active of γράφω and φημί.—Aug- ment.—Personal Endings.—ω-verbs and μι-verbs . . . . .	24
XV. Personal Pronouns.—Present Indicative Active of λύω and δείκνυμι . . . . .	27
XVI. Pronouns continued : αὐτός, ἄλλος, ὅδε, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος.— Imperfect Indicative Active of λύω and δείκνυμι . . . . .	29
XVII. Pronouns continued : ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος, ὅς, τίς, τί, τις, τί, ὅστις . . . . .	32
XVIII. Reflexive Pronouns.—Numerals.—Declension of εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς, τέσσαρες . . . . .	34
XIX. Prepositions . . . . .	36
XX. Temporal Augment.—Augment of Compound Verbs . . . .	39

LESSON	PAGE
XXI. Middle Voice.—Present Indicative Middle of <i>λύω</i> and <i>δείκνυμι</i> .—Personal Endings of Present Middle .	41
XXII. Imperfect Indicative Middle and Passive of <i>λύω</i> and <i>δείκνυμι</i> . . . . .	44
XXIII. Classified Vocabulary of Words in first Twenty-two Lessons . . . . .	46
XXIV. Present Subjunctive and Present Optative of <i>λύω</i> , in all Voices.—Uses of the Modes in Simple Sentences: (1) Hortative Subjunctive; (2) Optative of Desire . . . . .	50
XXV. Present Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Active of <i>λύω</i> Synopsis of Present System in the Active Voice.—Infinitive in Indirect Discourse .	52
XXVI. Present Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Middle and Passive of <i>λύω</i> .—Synopsis of Present System in the Middle (and Passive) Voice.—Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	55
XXVII. Adjectives of two Endings of Vowel-Declension.—Review of Present System in all Voices.—Irregularities in Form of Augment.—Use of the Participle . . . . .	58
XXVIII. Uses of the Modes in Dependent Sentences: (1) In Indirect Assertions with <i>ὅτι</i> and <i>ὥς</i> ; (2) In Final Clauses; (3) In Conditional Sentences referring to the Future . . . . .	60
XXIX. Verbs in <i>-μι</i> .—Present System of <i>δείκνυμι</i> in all Voices . . . . .	63
XXX. Present System of <i>ἵστημι</i> in all Voices . . . . .	66
XXXI. Present System of <i>τίθημι</i> and <i>ἵημι</i> in all Voices . . . . .	68
XXXII. Present System of <i>δίδωμι</i> in all Voices . . . . .	71
XXXIII. The Small Verbs in <i>-μι</i> : Present Systems of <i>εἰμί</i> , <i>φημί</i> , <i>κεῖμαι</i> , <i>ἥμαι</i> . . . . .	73
XXXIV. Consonant Declension: I. Stems ending in a Labial or Palatal Mute . . . . .	76
XXXV. II. (a) Masculine and Feminine Stems ending in a Lingual Mute . . . . .	79
XXXVI. II. (b) Neuter Stems ending in a Lingual Mute.—Present System of <i>εἶμι</i> . . . . .	81
XXXVII. III. Stems ending in a Liquid.—Syncopated Stems in <i>-ερ-</i> . . . . .	84

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVIII. iv. Stems ending in -εσ- and -ασ-.—v. Stems ending in -f- . . . . .	87
XXXIV. vi. Stems ending in a Simple Close Vowel . . . . .	90
XL. vii. Stems ending in a Diphthong . . . . .	92
XLI. Third or Consonant-Declension concluded: Anomalous Nouns . . . . .	95
XLII. Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension: ἡδύς, εὐγενής, πλήρης . . . . .	98
XLIII. Adjectives of Consonant-Declension, continued: μέλας, εὐδαίμων, χαρίεις, πᾶς . . . . .	101
XLIV. Adjectives of Consonant-Declension, concluded: Participle Stems in -ντ-.—Irregular Adjectives μέγας and πολύς . . . . .	103
XLV. Comparison of Adjectives.—Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives . . . . .	107
XLVI. Irregular Comparison.—Defective Comparison.—Comparison by Adverbs.—Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	110
XLVII. Contract-Verbs: Present System of τιμάω in all Voices	114
XLVIII. Present System of φιλέω in all Voices . . . . .	117
XLIX. Present System of δηλόω in all Voices.—Declension of Present Participle of Contract-Verbs . . . . .	120
L. Classified Vocabulary of Words in Lessons XXIV–XLIX . . . . .	123
LI. Formation and Inflection of Future Active and Middle	130
LII. Future Active and Middle, concluded . . . . .	133
LIII. Formation of First Aorist-Stem, and Inflection of First Aorist System of λύω and φαίνω in the Active Voice . . . . .	135
LIV. The First Aorist Middle . . . . .	138
LV. The Second Aorist System.—Synopsis and Inflection of the Common Form, in the Active Voice . . . . .	141
LVI. Second Aorist System, continued.—Synopsis and Inflection of the Common Form, in the Middle Voice . . . . .	144
LVII. Second Aorist System, continued.—Synopsis and Inflection of two Second Aorists of the -μι Form: ἔστην and ἔβην, in the Active Voice.—Circumstantial Participles, in their Ordinary and Absolute Use . . . . .	147

LESSON	PAGE
LVIII. Second Aorist System of the -μ Form, continued.— Synopsis and Inflection of the Second Aorist System of <i>δίδωμι</i> in the Active and Middle Voice, and of <i>γινώσκω</i> in the Active Voice.—Supplementary Participle . . . . .	151
LIX. Second Aorist System of the -μ Form, concluded: Synopsis and Inflection of the Second Aorist System of <i>τίθημι</i> and <i>ἵημι</i> in the Active and Middle Voices . . . . .	154
LX. Formation of the Present-Stem.—First Four Classes .	157
LXI. Formation of the Present-Stem.—Last Three Classes .	160
LXII. Perfect Active Systems . . . . .	162
LXIII. Perfect Middle System, including the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Middle and Passive .	165
LXIV. Passive Systems, including the First and Second Aorist and the First and Second Future . . . . .	168
LXV. Review Questions in verb <i>λῶ</i> .—Verbal Adjectives in -τός and -τέος . . . . .	172
LXVI. Present and Past Conditions: Particular and General	175
LXVII. List of Common Conjunctions and Particles.—Connected descriptive passage for translation . . . . .	179
With Lesson LXVIII, page 183, the Anabasis is commenced, and is continued in the twelve remaining lessons to Chap. II, § 7, of Book I. With each of these later lessons is connected an exercise in Recomposition, based upon the Greek text for each day.	
APPENDIX A. Greek text of Lessons LXVIII-LXXX in connected narrative . . . . .	209
APPENDIX B. The most Important Rules of Greek Syntax, selected from Allen-Hadley . . . . .	214
APPENDIX C. Alphabetical List of Fifty Important Verbs .	226
GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	228
ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY . . . . .	243

## LESSON I.

### *Names of the Letters of the Alphabet, their Forms and their Sounds.*

Learn in Grammar: Sections (§§) 1, 5 (first two and last two columns), 6, 7, 8 and a, 11.<sup>1</sup>

1. FORMS OF THE LETTERS.—Most of the Greek letters are identical with the corresponding letters of the English (Roman) alphabet, and this statement is true even where there seems to be considerable dissimilarity. Thus:

A, B, E, Z, I, K, M, N, O, T, and the small letters.

$\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\epsilon$ ,  $\zeta$ ,  $\iota$ ,  $\kappa$ ,  $\mu$ ,  $\nu$ ,  $\omicron$ ,  $\tau$ , are practically identical in Greek and English.

In  $\Gamma$ ,  $\Delta$ ,  $\Lambda$ ,  $\Pi$ ,  $\Phi$ ,  $\Sigma$ ,  $\Upsilon$ , the identity is less apparent, though it still exists. Thus:

$\Gamma$  (also anciently written  $\angle$ ) represents English G.

$\Delta$  (also sometimes written  $\triangleright$ , D) represents Eng. D.

$\Lambda$  (also written  $\angle$ ) represents English L.

$\Pi$  (also written  $\Pi$ ) easily passed into English P.

$\Phi$  (also written  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$ ) represents English R.

---

<sup>1</sup> A simple statement should be made by the teacher as to what is meant by the Attic dialect; as to its relation to the Ionian dialect; as to the localities where the different dialects were spoken. The facts are all contained in the introduction to the Grammar, §§ 2, 3.



Σ (also written ≤) represents English S.

Υ (also written V) represents English U and V.

The small letters corresponding to those just mentioned, viz., γ, δ, λ, π, ρ, ς (also σ), υ, are simply slightly varied forms of the capital letters, which were found more convenient for writing.

2. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.—The sounds of the Greek letters are indicated by the equivalent Roman characters (see § 5, last column). The orthography of Greek, like that of Latin (in the Roman method), is *phonetic*, i. e., each letter has but one invariable sound, whatever its position.

## LESSON II.

### *The Vowels and their Classification.—Diphthongs.—Breathings.*

Grammar: §§ 9, 10, 11 with a, 12, 13, 14 only a and c, first four lines, 17 with a and b, 18.

3. In pronouncing *a*, the organs of speech are wide open; in pronouncing *ε* (*η*), *ο* (*ω*), they are less open; in pronouncing *ι* and *υ*, they are nearly closed. Hence the names *open* and *close* as applied to the vowels.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> One always learns the vowels in the following order: *a*, *ε*, *ι*, *ο*, *υ*. Arrange in a diagram thus:

Open,	<i>a</i> ( <i>ᾱ</i> )	
Less open,	<i>ε</i> ( <i>η</i> )	<i>ο</i> ( <i>ω</i> )
Close,	<i>ι</i>	<i>υ</i>

4. By annexing *ι* and *υ*, successively, to each of the open vowels, twelve diphthongs are derived. But the combination *āv* is not used, and the number twelve is made up by the union of the close vowels in the diphthong *υι*.

5. Pronounce the following diphthongs thus:

*αι* like "ai" in *aisle*.

*αυ* like "ou" in *our*.

*ει*<sup>1</sup> like "ei" in *rein*.

*ευ* like "ew" in *few*.

*οι* like "oi" in *boil*.

*ου* like "ou" in *through*.

6. Exactly how strongly the rough breathing (which was at first indicated by the special character H) was uttered it is impossible to say. But it was undoubtedly always so uttered that its presence was unmistakeable.<sup>2</sup>

## 7. VOCABULARY.

γράφω	<i>I write (graph-ic, graph-ite)</i>
γράμ-μα-τα	<i>writings, letters</i>
μαν-θά-νω	<i>I learn</i>
μα-θή-μα-τα	<i>lessons (mathemat-ics)</i>

Spell and pronounce: γε, γη, κε, κη, και, δε, δη, δαι, τε, τη, ταις, ταυ, του, τοι, θι, θει, ρω, σα, σου, φι, φευ, βη-τα, δελ-τα, συγ-μα, θη-τα, χι, χει, οι, αυ, ευ, αι, α, η, φ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Many modern scholars prefer to pronounce the diphthong *ει* like "ei" in *height*.

<sup>2</sup> The signs for the rough and smooth breathings are said to be derived from the first and second half of the character H, the original sign of the rough breathing. *ι* came to be written *ι*, and *υ* came to be written *υ*.

## LESSON III.

*The Consonants and their Classification.*

Grammar: §§ 19, 20, 21 with a, b, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26.<sup>1</sup>

8. THE sounds of the consonants are in general the same in Greek as of the corresponding letters in English. It should, however, be noticed that γ and τ never have the soft sounds of j and sh.

The aspirates (φ, χ, θ) are generally pronounced by modern scholars like f, ch (German ch aspirate), and th.

Z (ζ) is pronounced by some modern scholars like English z; by others, like dz. There are no silent consonants in Greek.

## 9. VOCABULARY.

ἐ-χω		<i>I have</i>
οὐ before consonants	}	<i>not</i>
οὐκ before vowels		
τοῦ-το		<i>this</i>

## 10. EXERCISE.

1. γρά-φω γράμ-μα-τα. 2. μα-θή-μα-τα μαν-θά-νω.  
3. οὐκ ἔ-χω τοῦ-το. 4. τοῦ-το γρά-φω. 5. οὐ γρά-φω  
γράμ-μα-τα.

1. I write. 2. I have. 3. I learn. 4. I do not write. 5. I do not learn.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vowels, Lat. *vocales*, lit. "vocal letters," can make a complete syllable by themselves. Consonants, Lat. *consonantes*, lit. "sounded with," can not make a complete syllable by themselves, but require the aid of a vowel. The semi-vowels—nasals and liquids—admit of partial utterance without the help of a vowel.

Spell and pronounce : ξέ-νος, ψεύ-δος, γνώ-μη, ἀλ-λά, καί, ἄγ-γε-λος.<sup>1</sup> Name the following letters, and tell to what class or classes each belongs : β, δ, γ, φ, θ, χ, π, σ, λ, ρ, μ, ν, ξ, ψ, ζ.

## LESSON IV.

*Division of Words into Syllables.—Names of three Syllables.—Quantity.*

Grammar : §§ 27, 89, 90, 91 a, b, c, 92 a and b, 93, 94.

11. γράφω	I write	Inflect similarly :
γράφεις	you write	μανθάνω and ἔχω.
γράφει	he writes	

### 12. VOCABULARY.

ἀλλά	} but
ἀλλ' before vowels	
ἄνθρωπος	man (anthropo-logy)
καί	and
ὀνόματα	names
πράγματα	things

### 13. EXERCISE.

1. οὐκ ὀνόματα ἀλλὰ πράγματα. 2. οὐ γράμματα ἀλλ' ὀνόματα. 3. ἄνθρωπος ὀνόματα ἔχει. 4. ἄνθρωπος γράφει γράμματα. 5. τοῦτο γράφω.

1. He has this. 2. He writes names. 3. He learns names and things. 4. You write this. 5. He does not learn names but letters.

Pronounce : ā, η, ī, ω, ū, α, ε, ι, ο, υ.  
βā, βη, βī, βō, βū, βα, βε, βι, βο, βυ.

---

<sup>1</sup> The teacher will explain the pronunciation of ἄγγελος.

Divide: *πασχω, φθογγος, θρεψω, ὑπελασās.*

Write, in Greek letters, *Hellēnōn, ēchō, heuriskō, rhiza, hieros.*

How many vowels are there? Name them. How many consonants? How many mutes? Name them. How many liquids?

What letters has the Greek alphabet in excess of the English? *Ans. η, ω, θ, φ, χ, ψ.*

What letters has the English alphabet in excess of the Greek? *Ans. c, f, h, j, q, v, w, y.*

## LESSON V.

*Accent.—Pres. Indic. Act. of γράφω.*

Grammar: §§ 95, 96 a and b, 97, 99.

14. Sing.	1. γράφω	I write
	2. γράφεις	you write
	3. γράφει	he writes
Dual	2. γράφετον	both of you write
	3. γράφετον	both of them write
Plu.	1. γράφομεν	we write
	2. γράφετε	you write
	3. γράφουσι	they write

Inflect similarly: *μανθάνω* and *ἔχω*.

## 15. VOCABULARY.

ἐκείνο	<i>that</i>
δύο	<i>two (dual)</i>
τρία	<i>three</i>
πέντε	<i>five (penta-gon)</i>

**16. EXERCISE.**

1. Τρία μαθήματα μανθάνομεν. 2. οὐκ ἐκεῖνο ἀλλὰ τοῦτο γράφω. 3. πέντε ὀνόματα ἔχει. 4. ἔχετε. 5. μανθάνει.

1. I learn two lessons. 2. I write not this but that. 3. They learn names and things. 4. We write. 5. They have.

Write, in English letters, the following names of Greek gods and goddesses: Zeus, 'Ηρα, 'Αθηνᾶ, 'Αρης, Ποσειδων, 'Αφροδιτη, 'Ερμης.

**LESSON VI.**

*Accent as affected by Quantity. — Punctuation. —  
Pres. Indic. Act. of φημί.*

Grammar: §§ 100 a, b, c; 101 a-f; 102 a; 108; 111, three lines; 113, three lines; 121.

**17.** THE English language, as ordinarily spoken, furnishes constant examples of proclitics and enclitics. The articles, possessive pronouns, and monosyllabic prepositions are usually proclitic; the personal pronouns in the objective case are generally enclitic. E. g. proclitics: To market, my life; enclitics: tell me, strike him. Examples might be multiplied indefinitely, as the number of proclitic and enclitic words is far greater in English than in Greek.

<b>18.</b> Sing.	1. φημί	I say
	2. φής	you say
	3. φησί	he says

Dual	2. φατόν	you twain say
	3. φατόν	the(y) twain say
Plu.	1. φαμέν	we say
	2. φατέ	you say
	3. φασί	they say

All the forms of this tense are enclitic except the 2d sing.

### 19. VOCABULARY.

τί;	<i>what? why? (Lat. quid?)</i>
πότε;	<i>when?</i>
πῶς;	<i>how?</i>
φημί	<i>I say (Lat. fa-ri, fa-tus)</i>

### 20. EXERCISE.

1. τί γράφεις; 2. πῶς τοῦτο μαθαίνουνσι; 3. πότε μαθήματα μαθαίνει; 4. οὐ τοῦτο, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνό φημι (115 b). 5. τρία μαθήματα μαθαύνομεν.

1. We learn this and we say that. 2. What have you? 3. What does he say? 4. What is he saying? 5. Why do you write letters?

Add the proper accent to each of the following words (the vowel which is to receive the accent is indicated in each case by a subscribed dot):<sup>1</sup> νῆσος, δῶρον, τέκνον, ἄνθρωπος, πρᾶγματα, σῦκα.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sufficient practice in naming, pronouncing, and classifying vowels and consonants, and in the designation of words according to their accent, can henceforth be had from the several exercises.

LESSON VII.<sup>1</sup>

*Introductory Statements regarding Nouns.—Χώρα and Τίμη declined.—Pres. Indic. Act. of εἶμι.*

Grammar: §§ 122, 123 and a, 128–132, 134, 135.

21.

	(Stem χωρᾱ-)		(Stem τιμᾱ-)
N.	χώρᾱ	N.	τιμή
G.	χώρᾱς	G.	τιμῆς (129)
D.	χώρῃ	D.	τιμῇ
A.	χώρᾱν	A.	τιμήν
V.	χώρᾱ	V.	τιμή
N. A. V.	χώρᾱ	N. A. V.	τιμᾶ (129, l. 1)
G. D.	χώραιν	G. D.	τιμᾶιν (129, l. 2 & 3).
N.	χώραι (102 a)	N.	τιμαί
G.	χωρών (141)	G.	τιμών
D.	χώραις	D.	τιμαῖς
A.	χώρᾱς	A.	τιμᾶς
V.	χώραι	V.	τιμαί

**22. RULE.**—The genitive plural of nouns of the first declension is perispomenon, whatever the accent of the nominative singular.

**23. Sing.** 1. εἶμι I am  
 2. εἶ you are  
 3. ἐστί he is (cf. Lat. *est*)

<sup>1</sup> At this point a review lesson of the entire ground thus far gone over may be found profitable. The difficulty and novelty of the whole subject should constantly be kept in mind by the teacher.



Dual	2. ἐστόν	you twain are
	3. ἐστόν	the(y) twain are
Plu.	1. ἐσμέν	we are
	2. ἐστέ	you are
	3. εἰσὶ	they are

All these forms are enclitic except the 2d sing. The inflection closely resembles that of *φημί*.

## 24. VOCABULARY.

εἰμί	<i>I am</i> (cf. Lat. <i>est</i> , Engl. <i>is</i> , and <i>ἐστί</i> )
σκιᾶ	<i>shadow</i>
τιμή	<i>honor</i>
χώρᾱ	<i>land, country</i>

## 25. EXERCISE.

1. τιμή (108) σκιᾶ ἐστί. 2. οὐκ (111 d) ἔχω χώρᾱν.  
3. τί ἐστι(ν) (87, 3) ἄνθρωπος; 4. σκιᾶ ἐστι(ν). 5.  
ἄνθρωπός εἰμι (115 b).

1. We have honors. 2. We are shadows. 3. He writes three letters (of the alphabet). 4. What are you learning? 5. When do you write?

Pronounce the following proper names and write them in English letters: Περικλῆς, Πρόξενος, Ἀλφειός, Στέφανος, Ἀθῆναι, Βυζάντιον, Ἐραστός, Μελάγχθων. (Refer to 15.)

## LESSON VIII.

*First Declension continued.—γέφυρα and γλώσσα.—  
Two classes of Feminines.*

Grammar: §§ 135, 136, 137, 138, 139 a, c, d, and Rem.

## 26.

	(γεφῦρᾱ-)		(γλωσσᾱ-)
N.	γέφυρα	N.	γλώσσα
G.	γεφύρᾱς	G.	γλώσσης
D.	γεφύρῃ	D.	γλώσση
A.	γέφυραν	A.	γλώσσαν
V.	γέφυρα	V.	γλώσσα
N. A. V.	γεφύρᾱ	N. A. V.	γλώσσᾱ
G. D.	γεφύραιν	G. D.	γλώσσαιν
N. V.	γέφυραι	N. V.	γλώσσαι
G.	γεφῦράν	G.	γλωσσάν
D.	γεφύραις	D.	γλώσσαις
A.	γεφύρᾱς	A.	γλώσσᾱς

27. The feminine article ἡ, *the*, is declined as follows in the singular and plural:

Sing. N.	ἡ	Plu. N.	αἱ
G.	τῆς	G.	τῶν
D.	τῇ	D.	ταῖς
A.	τήν	A.	τάς

Vocative wanting; the forms ἡ and αἱ are proclitic.

28. RULE.—A limiting genitive with its article often stands between the noun on which it depends and its article: e. g. ἡ τῆς πύλης σκιά *the shadow of the gate*.

**29. VOCABULARY.**

γέφυρα	bridge
γλῶσσα	tongue (gloss-ary, poly-glott)
ἡ, fem. article	the
πύλη	gate (Thermo-pylæ, lit. hot-gates)

**30. EXERCISE.**

1. ἄνθρωπος τιμὰς ἔχει. 2. ἡ χώρα οὐκ ἔχει γεφύ-  
 ρας. 3. τοῦτό ἐστιν (115 b) ἡ τῆς χώρας πύλη. 4.  
 μανθάνομεν τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν (Greek) γλῶσσαν. 5. Τί  
 φησι(ν) ὁ (the) ἄνθρωπος ;

1. Why do you write letters (of the alphabet)?  
 2. What are you saying? 3. What is this? 4. How  
 do you learn this? 5. The country has two bridges.

**LESSON IX.**

*First Declension concluded.*—νεανίας and πολίτης.

Grammar: §§ 140, 141, 145, 146, 147 and c.

**31.**

	(νεανιά-)		(πολίτᾱ-)
N.	νεανίας	N.	πολίτης
G.	νεανίου	G.	πολίτου
D.	νεανίᾳ	D.	πολίτῃ
A.	νεανίαν	A.	πολίτην
V.	νεανιά	V.	πολίτα (147)
N. A. V.	νεανιά	N. A. V.	πολίτᾱ
G. D.	νεανίαιν	G. D.	πολίταιν
N.	νεανίαι	N.	πολίται
G.	νεανίων	G.	πολιτών
D.	νεανίαις	D.	πολίταις
A.	νεανίας	A.	πολίτᾱς

REMARK.—Mascnlines of the first declension are declined in the dual and plural like feminines; and the only difference in the singular is in the nominative case, which ends in -s, and in the genitive, which always ends in -ου.

### 32. VOCABULARY.

ἐπιστολή	letter (epistle)	
λαμβάνω	I take, I receive	
νεανίας	youth, young man	
πολίτης	citizen (polit-ical)	
ὁ, ἡ οἱ, αἱ	nom. sing. and nom. plu. forms of the definite article in the masc. and fem. genders	All these words are proclitics (111)
ἐν, prep. w. dat.	in, among (Lat. in)	
ἐκ (ἐξ), prep. w. gen.	out of (Lat. ex)	

### 33. EXERCISE.

1. ὁ ἄνθρωπος γράφει ἐπιστολήν. 2. λαμβάνομεν τὰς ἐπιστολὰς τοῦ πολίτου. 3. ὁ πολίτης ἐστί(ν) (116) ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ. 4. οἱ πολῖται ἔχουσι τὴν χώραν. 5. ἐκ τῆς χώρας.

1. The citizens have honors. 2. The young men are citizens of the country. 3. Why has not the country citizens? 4. When do you write the letters? 5. In the country is a bridge.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.—Form the nom. sing. and practise the declension of nouns from the following stems: δικᾱ- justice, ἀμιλλᾱ- rivalry, μουσᾱ muse, ῥιζᾱ- root, θυρᾱ- door, ὀπλιτᾱ- (masc.) heavy-armed soldier, μοιρᾱ- fate, βιᾱ- force, Περσᾱ- (masc.) Persian, λεαινᾱ- lioness.

REMARK.—In some of the above words the place of the accent is indicated by an underwritten dot (.). When not so indicated, it is determined by 139 Rem.

## LESSON X.

*Second Declension.*

Grammar: §§ 151, 153, 155, and a.

## 34.

	ὁ ἄνθρωπος <i>man</i> (ἄνθρωπο-)	ἡ ὁδός <i>way</i> (ὁδο-)	τὸ δῶρον <i>gift</i> (δωρο-)
N.	ἄνθρωπο-ς	ὁδός	δῶρο-ν
G.	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	δώρου
D.	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	δώρῳ
A.	ἄνθρωπο-ν	ὁδό-ν	δῶρο-ν
V.	ἄνθρωπε	ὁδέ	δῶρο-ν
N. A. V.	ἀνθρώπω	ὁδῶ	δώρω
G. D.	ἀνθρώποιν	ὁδοῖν	δώροιν
N. V.	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	δῶρα
G.	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	δώρων
D.	ἀνθρώποις	ὁδοῖς	δώροις
A.	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδοὺς	δῶρα

**35. RULE.** The indirect object is put in the dative, e. g. τῷ (see § 40, p. 16) στρατηγῷ πέμπει δῶρα, *he sends gifts to the general.* [763]

**36. VOCABULARY.**

ἀδελφός

*brother (Adelphi)*

δῶρον

*gift*

θεός

*god (Theo-dore)*

ἵππος

*horse (hippo-potamus)*

ὁδός fem.

*way (odo-meter)*

ποταμός

*river (hippo-potamus)*

στρατηγός

*general (strategist)*

μένω

*I remain (Lat. maneo)*

πέμπω

*I send*

eis prep. w. acc.

*into*

37. EXERCISE.

1. μένομεν ἐν τῇ τῆς πύλης σκιᾷ. 2. οἱ νεᾶνῖαι λαμβάνουσι τὰς ἐπιστολάς. 3. ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ εἰσι δύο ἐπποπόταμοι. 4. οἱ πολῖται μένουσι ἐν τῇ. 5. θεὸς πέμπει δῶρα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις.

1. The citizens in the country receive gifts. 2. The horse remains in the road. 3. He sends two horses to the general. 4. What are you learning, brother? 5. Into the river.

SPECIMEN ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἡ τῆς χώρας τιμή. 2. ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν. 3. τῆς γεφύρας. 4. ἐν τοῖς πολίταις.

1. Of the citizens. 2. Among the youths. 3. Out of the river. 4. Into the (see § 40) country.

LESSON XI.

*Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.—Declension of the Article.—Attribution and Predication.*

Grammar: §§ 222, and a and b.

38. IN Greek, as in Latin, the form of the adjective is varied according to the case, number, gender of the noun to which it belongs; i. e. adjectives are declined.

Most adjectives belong to the vowel-declension—the masculine and neuter following ἄνθρωπος and δῶρον; the feminine, τιμή and χώρα.

The changes of accent are in general the same for adjectives as for nouns.

## 39.

	M. <i>good</i>	F.	N.	M. <i>friendly</i>	F.	N.
S. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	φίλιος	φιλία	φίλιον
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ	φίλιου	φιλίας	φίλιου
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	φίλῳ	φιλίᾳ	φίλῳ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν	φίλιον	φιλίᾱν	φίλιον
V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	φίλιε	φιλία	φίλιον
<hr/>						
Dual.	ἀγαθῶ	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθῶ	φίλῳ	φιλίᾱ	φίλῳ
	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν	φίλοιιν	φιλίαιν	φίλοιιν
<hr/>						
P. N.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά	φίλιοι	φίλιαι (222b)	φίλια
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	φίλιων	φιλίων (222b)	φιλίων
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς	φίλοις	φιλίαις	φίλοις
A.	ἀγαθοῦς	ἀγαθᾶς	ἀγαθά	φίλους	φιλίας	φίλια

40. The full declension of the definite article ὁ, ἡ, τό, is here for the first time given; it has the two stems ὁ- and το-.

S. N.	ὁ <i>the</i>	ἡ	τό
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
A.	τόν	τήν	τό
<hr/>			
Dual.	τῶ	τῶ	τῶ
	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν
<hr/>			
P. N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τούς	τάς	τά

41. Adjectives may be connected with nouns in two ways:

- 1) The connection may be assumed (not asserted), as when we say in English, "the good man." In this case the adjective is called an attributive.

- 2) The connection may be asserted by some form of the verb *to be* (or verb of kindred meaning), expressed or understood. In this case the adjective is called a predicate adjective.

**42. RULE 1.**—The attributive adjective usually stands, as in English, between the article and the noun; the predicate adjective follows or precedes both article and noun. Thus: attributive position ἡ μικρὰ νῆσος (or, what is the same thing, ἡ νῆσος ἡ μικρὰ), *the small island*; predicate position ἡ νῆσος μικρὰ or μικρὰ ἡ νῆσος, *the island is small*.

**43. RULE 2.**—An adjective agrees with its substantive in case, number, and gender. [620]

**44. RULE 3.**—A predicate-substantive must agree in case with the substantive to which it refers; a predicate-adjective must agree in case, number, and gender. [614]

#### 45. VOCABULARY.

νῆσος fem.	<i>island</i> (Micro-nesia)
πλοῖον	<i>boat, transport</i>
ἀγαθός 3	<i>good</i>
καλός 3	<i>beautiful</i>
μικρός 3	<i>small</i> (Micro-nesia)
φίλιος 3	<i>friendly</i>
φιλία	<i>friendship</i>
φίλος	<i>friend</i> (phil-anthropic)

#### 46. EXERCISE.

1. μένομεν ἐν μικραῖς νήσοις. 2. αἱ νῆσοι μικραὶ εἰσι(ν). 3. μικραὶ αἱ νῆσοι. 4. τὰ τῶν θεῶν δῶρα καλὰ. 5. λαμβάνομεν τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλὰ δῶρα.

1. The citizens are friendly. 2. The boats (see



§ 50) remain in the river. 3. In the river are small islands. 4. The islands in the river are small. 5. Why does the man not send a letter to the general? <sup>1</sup>

---

## LESSON XII.

### *Review Lesson on Accent.*

Grammar: §§ 95–108 coarse print, 128, 129, 141.

**47.** ACCENT, in English and in most modern languages, means a *stress of utterance* distinguishing a certain syllable of a word. To the Greeks, however, it signified a *distinction in pitch* between the accented syllable and other syllables. The acute, or “sharp,” accent indicated that the syllable on which it stood was pronounced on a higher pitch than the unaccented syllables, which were all considered to be grave—lit. “heavy”—were uttered, that is to say, in a lower or deeper tone.

We do not now attempt to give the ancient pitch-accent, in pronouncing Greek. We substitute a stress-accent, and distinguish the marked syllable by a greater force of utterance, not by raising the pitch. The accents, however, are a part of the written word, and it is important to understand the principles according to which they are changed in the inflection of words.

**48.** This lesson treats of the changes of accent in nouns (and adjectives) of the vowel-declension. The following statements are fundamental:

---

<sup>1</sup> The figures affixed to the adjectives, in the vocabularies of this and the following lessons, indicate the number of terminations in the nominative singular.

1. The accent of the nominative singular of nouns must be learned by observation.
2. The accent of the other cases remains the same as in the nominative singular, unless the *quantity of the final syllable* requires a change in the *place* or the *form* of the accent.
3. There are two special rules :
  - (a.) Words which have the acute on the ultima in the nominative singular, change this acute to the circumflex (i. e., oxytones become perispomena) in the genitive and dative of all numbers.
  - (b.) The genitive plural of the first declension has the circumflex on the ultima, whatever was the accent of the nominative singular.

49. The subject is now best illustrated by classified examples :

1. Oxytones.

ἀρχή	κριτής	θεός
ἀρχῆς	κριτοῦ	θεοῦ
ἀρχῇ	κριτῇ	θεῷ
ἀρχήν	κριτήν	θεόν
ἀρχή	κριτά (147)	θεός (155)
<hr/>		
ἀρχᾶ	κριτᾶ	θεώ
ἀρχαῖν	κριταῖν	θεοῖν
<hr/>		
ἀρχαί	κριταί	θεοί
ἀρχῶν	κριτῶν	θεῶν
ἀρχαῖς	κριταῖς	θεοῖς
ἀρχᾶς	κριτᾶς	θεοῦς

## 2. Paroxytones.

τέχνη	σοφίᾱ	γνώμη̄	λόγος
τέχνης	σοφίᾱς	γνώμης	λόγου
τέχνη	σοφίᾱ	γνώμη	λόγω
τέχνην	σοφίᾱν	γνώμην	λόγον
τέχνη	σοφίᾱ	γνώμη	λόγε
<hr/>			
τέχνᾱ	σοφίᾱ	γνώμᾱ	λόγω
τέχναιν	σοφίαιν	γνώμαιν	λόγοιν
<hr/>			
τέχναι	σοφίαι	γνώμαι	λόγοι
τεχνῶν	σοφιῶν	γνωμῶν	λόγων
τέχναις	σοφίαις	γνώμαις	λόγοις
τέχνᾱς	σοφίᾱς	γνώμᾱς	λόγους

## 3. Properispomena.

μούσα	δήμος
μούσης	δήμου
μούση	δήμῳ
μούσαν	δήμον
μούσα	δήμε
<hr/>	
μούσᾱ	δήμῳ
μούσαιν	δήμοιν
<hr/>	
μούσαι	δήμοι
μουσῶν	δήμων
μούσαις	δήμοις
μούσᾱς	δήμους

## 4. Proparoxytones.

θάλασσα	κίνδυνος
θαλάσσης	κινδύνου
θαλάσση	κινδύνῳ
θάλασσαν	κίνδυνον
θάλασσα	κίνδυνε
<hr/>	
θαλάσσᾱ	κινδύνῳ
θαλάσσαιν	κινδύνοιν
<hr/>	
θάλασσαι	κίνδυνοι
θαλασσῶν	κινδύνων
θαλάσσαις	κινδύνοις
θαλάσσᾱς	κινδύνους

**50. RULE.**—A neuter plural subject in Greek regularly has its verb in the singular. [604]

### 51. VOCABULARY.

ἀρχή	beginning (Archæ-ology)
γνώμη	judgment, opinion
δῆμος	people (demo-cracy)
εἰρήνη	peace (Irene)
θάλασσα	sea
θεός	God (theo-logy)
κίνδυνος	danger
κριτής	judge (crit-ic)
λόγος	word (cata-logue)
μοῦσα	muse (muse)
σοφία	wisdom (philo-sophy)
στρατιώτης	soldier
τέχνη	art (techno-logy)
υἱός	son

### 52. EXERCISE.

1. ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος καὶ Θεὸς ἦν (was) ὁ λόγος.
2. Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς ὁ Θεοῦ (υἱός<sup>1</sup>). 3. ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ πλοῖά ἐστι(ν).
4. ἡ Θεοῦ εἰρήνη. 5. ἡ τοῦ κριτοῦ σοφία.

1. In the river are small islands. 2. The people remain(s) in the country. 3. The soldiers are on the island. 4. Wisdom (§ 57) is a gift of God. 5. The judge sends a gift to his brother (lit. "to the brother").

## LESSON XIII.

### *Contracted Nouns and Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.*

Grammar: §§ 105, 144 one line, 157, 158 a, 223 one line.

53. It will be noticed, in the examples given below, that ε-ο and ο-ο contract into ου. Also,

that *ε* and *ο* are absorbed into a following diphthong.<sup>1</sup>

54 and 55.

<i>ἡ γῆ earth</i> (γεᾶ- or γαᾶ-)	<i>ὁ Ἑρμῆς Her- mes</i> (Ἑρμᾶ- for Ἑρμεᾶ-)	<i>ὁ νοῦς mind</i> (νοο-)	<i>τὸ ὀστοῦν bone</i> (οστέο-)
S. N. γῆ G. γῆς D. γῆ A. γῆν V. γῆ	Ἑρμῆ-ς Ἑρμοῦ Ἑρμῇ Ἑρμῆ-ν Ἑρμῇ	(νόο-ς) νοῦ-ς (νόου) νοῦ (νόφ) νῶ (νόο-ν) νοῦ-ν (νόε) νοῦ	(ὀστέο-ν) ὀστοῦ-ν (ὀστέου) ὀστοῦ (ὀστέφ) ὀστῶ (ὀστέο-ν) ὀστοῦ-ν (ὀστέο-ν) ὀστοῦ-ν
Dual	Ἑρμᾶ im- ages of H. Ἑρμαῖν	(νόω) νῶ (158 a) (νόοιν) νοῖν	(ὀστέω) ὀστά (158 a) (ὀστέοιν) ὀστοῖν
P. N. G. D. A.	Ἑρμαί Ἑρμῶν Ἑρμαῖς Ἑρμαῖς	(νόοι) νοί (νόων) νῶν (νόοις) νοῖς (νόους) νοῖς	(ὀστέα) ὀστᾶ (ὀστέων) ὀστῶν (ὀστέοις) ὀστοῖς (ὀστέα) ὀστᾶ

	<i>ἁπλός, contr. ἁπλοῦς simple</i>		
S. N. G. D. A. V.	ἁπλοῦς ἁπλοῦ ἁπλῶ ἁπλοῦν ἁπλοῦς	ἁπλή ἁπλής ἁπλῇ ἁπλήν ἁπλή	ἁπλοθ ἁπλοῦ ἁπλῶ ἁπλοθ ἁπλοῦν
Dual	ἁπλό (158 a) ἁπλοῖν	ἁπλᾶ ἁπλαῖν	ἁπλό ἁπλοῖν
P. N. G. D. A.	ἁπλοῖ ἁπλῶν ἁπλοῖς ἁπλοῦς	ἁπλαί ἁπλῶν ἁπλαῖς ἁπλᾶς	ἁπλᾶ ἁπλῶν ἁπλοῖς ἁπλᾶ

<sup>1</sup> The rules according to which contraction takes place will be explained later in detail (see Lessons XLVII, XLVIII, XLIX).

	<i>ἀργύρεος, contr. ἀργυροῦς (224, last two lines) of silver</i>		
S. N.	ἀργυροῦς	ἀργυρᾶ	ἀργυροῦν
G.	ἀργυροῦ	ἀργυρᾶς	ἀργυροῦ
D.	ἀργυρῷ	ἀργυρῷ	ἀργυρῷ
A.	ἀργυροῦν	ἀργυρᾶν	ἀργυροῦν
V.	ἀργυροῦς	ἀργυρᾶ	ἀργυροῦν
Dual	ἀργυρῶ (158 a) ἀργυροῖν	ἀργυρᾶ ἀργυραῖν	ἀργυρῶ ἀργυροῖν
P. N.	ἀργυροῖ	ἀργυραῖ	ἀργυρᾶ
G.	ἀργυρῶν	ἀργυρῶν	ἀργυρῶν
D.	ἀργυροῖς	ἀργυραῖς	ἀργυροῖς
A.	ἀργυροῦς	ἀργυρᾶς	ἀργυρᾶ

## 56. VOCABULARY.

ἀπλοῦς 3	<i>simple</i>
ἄργυρος	<i>silver</i>
ἀργυροῦς 3	<i>of silver</i>
γῆ	<i>earth (geo-graphy)</i>
Ἑρμῆς	<i>Hermes ; pl. statues of</i>
κακός 3	<i>bad, cowardly</i> [H.
μακρός 3	<i>long</i>
νοῦς	<i>mind</i>
ὀστοῦν	<i>bone (osteo-logy)</i>
παρά w. gen. of pers.	<i>from the side of, from</i>
“ w. dat. of pers.	<i>by the side of, with</i>
“ w. accus. of. pers.	<i>to the side of, to</i>
ὄρω, contracted fr. ὀράω	<i>I see</i>
φέρω	<i>I bear, I produce</i>

57. RULE 1.—The definite article is often used with abstract nouns, where in English it would be omitted.

58. RULE 2.—The appositive agrees in case with its substantive. [623]

## 59. EXERCISE.

1. ἀπλᾶ μαθήματα μανθάνομεν. 2. ἡ γῆ ἄργυρον φέρει. 3. τὴν μακρὰν γέφυραν ὁρῶ. 4. παρὰ θεῶ ἡ σοφία ἐστίν (116). 5. τί λαμβάνεις ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ ;

1. What does the judge say? 2. Peace brings good things to the country. 3. Art is long. 4. We are in danger. 5. I see the silver Hermes-statues.

## LESSON XIV.

*Imperfect Indic. Act. of γράφω and φημί.—Augment.  
—Personal Endings.—ω- verbs and μι- verbs.*

Grammar : §§ 306, 310, 311 three lines, with b and c.

## 60.

	Pers. Endings.	
ἐ-γραφο-ν	-ν	ἐ-φη-ν
I was writing		I was saying
ἐ-γραφε-ς	-ς	ἐ-φη-ς
you were writing		you were saying
ἐ-γραφε(ν)	—	ἐ-φη
he was writing		he was saying
ἐ-γράφε-τον	-τον	ἐ-φα-τον
both of you were writing		both of you were saying
ἐ-γραφέ-την	-την	ἐ-φά-την
both of them were writing		both of them were saying
ἐ-γράφο-μεν	-μεν	ἐ-φα-μεν
we were writing		we were saying
ἐ-γράφε-τε	-τε	ἐ-φα-τε
you were writing		you were saying
ἐγραφο-ν	-ν or -σαν	ἐ-φα-σαν
they were writing		they were saying

Like ἔγραφον inflect : ἔμενον I was remaining  
ἔπεμπον I was sending  
ἔφερον I was bearing

**61.** On comparing ἔγραφον, ἔφην with the presents γράφω and φημί, we at once notice that an ε has been prefixed. This ε is called the *augment*—lit. “increase”—and is applied, in the indicative mode, to the past tenses of verbs beginning with a consonant.

**62.** The *personal endings* of the past tenses in the active voice are given in the middle column (§ 60).

**63.** Verbs like γράφω are called, from the last letter of the 1 sing. pres. indic. act., “verbs in -ω.” Verbs like φημί are called, from the termination of the 1 sing. pres. indic. act., “verbs in -μι.”

Verbs in -ω are much more numerous, comprising nineteen-twentieths of all verbs. Verbs in -μι show an older and simpler formation, and include some of the commonest verbs.

These two formations differ in two respects: (1) slightly in the *endings*: the verb in -ω has -ν; the verb in -μι has -σαν in the 3 pl. of the imperfect; (2) more decidedly in the *stem* to which the endings are applied. The present and imperfect tenses are both formed from the same stem—the *present-stem*. By leaving off the augment and the personal ending, this present-stem is discovered, in the two imperfects under consideration. If the imperfect of γράφω is subjected to this process, two forms remain: γραφο- and γραφε-; otherwise written γραφ°|,-. This is the present-stem of γράφω. Applying the same process to the imperfect of φημί, there remains φα-, or, in the singular, the strengthened form φη-. These two forms are so related that they may be regarded as one, and the present-stem of φημί is φα-. We make, then, the following deduction: The present-stem of verbs in -ω ends in a *variable*



vowel (ο or ε); the present-stem of verbs in -μι has no such vowel.<sup>1</sup>

#### 64. VOCABULARY.

ἀπόστολος	apostle (apostle).
βοήθεια	aid
ἐπί prep. w. dat.	upon
ἐπί prep. w. acc.	against, sometimes to
καὶ—καί	} both—and
τε (enclitic)—καί	
( ) μὲν—( ) δέ	( )—but, ( )—and
Παῦλος	Paul
πρῶτος 3	first
στρατιώτης	soldier

65. RULE.—Contrast between two clauses is often indicated in Greek by μὲν and δέ, which never begin their clause, but are usually the second word in their clause. μὲν is commonly left untranslated; δέ is translated by “but” or “and.”

#### 66. EXERCISE.

1. τοῖς στρατιώταις βοήθειαν πέμπει ὁ στρατηγός.
2. τοῦτο οὐκ ἔφην. 3. πότε τὰ μαθήματα ἐμανθάνετε;
4. ἡ πρώτη ἐπιστολὴ Παύλου, τοῦ ἀποστόλου. 5. ὁ μὲν στρατηγὸς γράφει, ὁ δὲ στρατιώτης λαμβάνει, ἐπιστολᾶς.

1. We were remaining. 2. We were sending the soldiers against the country. 3. There is a gate upon the bridge. 4. You were sending both general and soldiers. 5. We were writing letters.

---

<sup>1</sup> The reason why the *imperfects* of these two verbs are selected for comparison is because the difference between the -ω and -μι conjugation is least in the imperfect tense.

LESSON XV.

*Personal Pronouns.—Present Indic. Act. of λύω and δείκνυμι.*

Grammar: §§ 261, 263, 301.

67.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
Sing. Nom. Gen. Dat. Accus.	ἐγώ <i>I</i> ἐμοῦ, μοῦ ἐμοί, μοί ἐμέ, μέ	σύ <i>thou</i> σοῦ σοί σέ	οὗ <i>of him, her, it</i> οἱ ἐ
Dual N. A. V. G. D.	ὡς <i>two of us</i> ὧν	σφός <i>two of you</i> σφῶν	
Plur. Nom. Gen. Dat. Accus.	ἡμεῖς <i>we</i> ἡμῶν ἡμῖν ἡμᾶς	ὅμεῖς <i>you</i> ὅμων ὅμιν ὅμᾶς	σφεῖς <i>they</i> σφῶν σφῶσι σφᾶς

68.

		Pers. Endings.	
I loose	λύω	-μι	δείκνυ-μι I show
you loose	λύεις	-ς	δείκνυ-ς you show
he looses	λύει	-σι	δείκνυ-σι he shows
both of you loose	λύετε-τον	-τον	δείκνυ-τον both of you show
both of them loose	λύετε-τον	-τον	δείκνυ-τον both of them show
we loose	λύο-μεν	-μεν	δείκνυ-μεν we show
you loose	λύετε-τε	-τε	δείκνυ-τε you show
they loose	λύουσιν	-(ν)σι	δείκνυ-σιν they show

**69.** The preceding section gives the Present Indicative Act. of two common verbs: the first, a verb in  $\omega$ ; the second, a verb in  $\mu$ . The second, being the simpler formation, more readily discloses on examination the personal endings of this tense, and of other tenses (called principal tenses) inflected like it. The present-stem of  $\lambdaύω$  is seen to be  $\lambdaῡο$  or  $\lambdaῡε$ , that is, to end with the variable vowel; the present-stem of  $δείκνυμι$  is  $δεικνυ$ , the final  $\nu$  being long in the singular, short in dual and plural.

**70.** Observe that the variable vowel of the present and imperfect Indicative appears as  $ο$  before  $\mu$  or  $\nu$ ; otherwise as  $ε$ .

**71. RULE 1.**—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. [601]

**72. RULE 2.**—The subject is often omitted when it is a pronoun of the first and second person. [602]

**73. RULE 3.**—A finite verb agrees with its subject nominative in number and person. [603]

#### **74. VOCABULARY.**

$\alphaγγελος$	<i>messenger (angel)</i>
$δεσπότης$	<i>master (despot)</i>
$δοῦλος$	<i>slave</i>
$δείκνυμι$	<i>I show, I point out</i>
$κώμη$	<i>village</i>
$λύω$	<i>I loose, I destroy</i>
$πέτρα$	<i>rock (Peter, petri-fy)</i>
$ἐγώ$	<i>I (Lat. ego)</i>
$σύ$	<i>thou (Lat. tu)</i>
$οὗ$	<i>of him, her, it (Lat. sui)</i>
$\omega$ interj. w. voc.	<i>O!</i>

## 75. EXERCISE.

1. ἡμεῖς μὲν γράφομεν, σὺ δὲ λαμβάνεις, ἐπιστολὰς.  
 2. καὶ σὺ τοῦτο φῆς. 3. τί σὺ φῆς ; 4. ἐγὼ τοῦτό φημι  
 (115 b). 5. τὰς τῆς κώμης πύλας δέικνυσιν ὁ δεσπότης  
 τῷ δούλῳ.

1. I see the shadow of the rock. 2. We destroy  
 the bridge in the river. 3. The messenger points out  
 the rock to the soldiers. 4. He writes me a letter.  
 5. The gifts of the master are beautiful.

## SPECIMEN ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ὦ δέσποτα (147 c), τί σὺ φῆς ; 2. τοῦτό φημι,  
 ἐκεῖνο οὐ φημι (115 c). 3. ἡμῖν, τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, φέρει ὁ  
 ἄγγελος ἐπιστολήν. 4. ὑμᾶς, τοὺς κριτὰς, ὁρῶ. 5.  
 τὸν τοῦ δεσπότητος ἄγγελον ὁρῶ.

1. To me, to thee, to us, to you. 2. We say, we  
 show, we write, we learn. 3. I say that, I do not say  
 this. 4. He said this to me.

## LESSON XVI.

*Pronouns continued : Intensive αὐτός ; Indefinite  
 ἄλλος ; Demonstrative ὅδε, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος.—Imper-  
 fect Indic. Act. of λύνω and δέικνυμι.*

Grammar : §§ 265 and a, 267, 271 entire, 272, 678, 679, 680, 682, 695.

## 76. Declension of ὅδε and οὗτος.

ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούτον	ταύτην	τούτο

τάδε	τάδε	τάδε	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τούτοις	τούτοις	τούτοις
οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε	οἷτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

## 77.

I was loosing	ἐ-λύο-ν	ἐ-δείκνυ-ν	I was showing
you were loosing	ἐ-λύε-ς	ἐ-δείκνυ-ς	you were showing
he was loosing	ἐ-λύε(ν)	ἐ-δείκνυ	he was showing
both of you were loosing	ἐ-λύε-τον	ἐ-δείκνυ-τον	both of you were showing
both of them were loosing	ἐ-λύε-την	ἐ-δείκνυ-την	both of them were showing
we were loosing	ἐ-λύο-μεν	ἐ-δείκνυ-μεν	we were showing
you were loosing	ἐ-λύε-τε	ἐ-δείκνυ-τε	you were showing
they were loosing	ἐ-λύο-ν	ἐ-δείκνυ-σαν	they were showing

The hyphens in the above paradigm are intended to call attention to the three elements: augment, present-stem, personal ending. For table of personal endings, see § 60.

**78. GENERAL RULE FOR ACCENT OF VERBS.**—The accent stands as far as possible from the end of the form (recessive accent, 104 b); that is, on the penult when the ultima is long by nature, otherwise on the antepenult. Compare and contrast this principle with that which held good in nouns and adjectives (§ 48).

**79. RULE 2.**—Substantives with the intensive αὐτός, and with the demonstratives [673] ὅδε, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος, require the article, and the pronoun takes the predicate position.

Thus: οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος (not οὗτος ἄνθρωπος), *this man*.

**80. RULE 3.**—ἄλλοι means *others*, Lat. *alii*; οἱ ἄλλοι means *the rest*, Lat. *ceteri*.

## 81. VOCABULARY.

ἄλλος	<i>other</i> (Lat. <i>alius</i> )
αὐτός	<i>self</i> (auto-graph)
ἐκεῖνος	<i>that</i> (there, yonder)
ἐκεῖ adv. of place	<i>there</i>
ὅδε	<i>this</i> (here, at hand)
ὥδε adv.	<i>thus</i> (as follows)
οὗτος	<i>this, that</i>
οὕτως adv.	<i>thus</i> (as previously shown)
ποῦ ;	<i>where ?</i>

## 82. EXERCISE.

1. πέμπει σὲ καὶ ἐμὲ εἰς ταύτην τὴν κώμην. 2. τόνδε τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὁρῶ. 3. τοὺς αὐτοὺς<sup>1</sup> στρατιώτᾱς εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἔπεμπε(ν). 4. ὁ αὐτὸς δεσπότης ἔχει ταύτην τὴν χώραν. 5. ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ ἄγγελος ; ἐκεῖ ἐστὶν.

1. He was showing to me the shadow of that rock. 2. This village is beautiful. 3. They were destroying the bridge in the river. 4. That land produces good citizens. 5. We have the same friends.

## SPECIMEN ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἔφην, ἔφαμεν, ἐγράφομεν, ἐφέρομεν. 2. αὕτη ἡ νῆσος, αὕτῃ ἡ νῆσος. 3. αὐτὸς φημι, αὐτοὶ φασι(ν), αὐτὸς ἔφη (Lat. *ipse dixit*). 4. οἱ αὐτοὶ πολῖται, οὗτοι οἱ πολῖται, αὐτοὶ οἱ πολῖται.

1. We ourselves say this. You yourself say that. 2. The country itself. The same country. This country. 3. He speaks as follows. He says this (these things). 4. We were sending aid. We were bearing presents.

## LESSON XVII.

*Pronouns continued: Possessives ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος.—Relative ὅς.—Interrogative τίς, τί.—Indefinite τις, τι.—Indefinite Relative ὅστις.*

Grammar: §§ 269, 275, 277 with a, 280.

**83. RULE 1.**—The possessive pronouns, like other adjectives, regularly have the attributive position when their noun has the article: ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, *my brother*.

**84. RULE 2.**—Instead of the possessive pronouns, the genitive of the personal pronouns μου, σου, ἡμῶν, ὑμῶν—and for the third person, αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτῶν—are more commonly used in the predicate position: ὁ ἀδελφός μου, *my brother*; ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτῆς, *her brother*; ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτῶν, *their brother*.

**85. RULE 3.**—The relative pronoun ὅς, ἡ, ὃ, is less used in Greek than the same pronoun in Latin and English, their being, as will hereafter be shown, several substitutes for it.

**86. RULE 4.**—The indefinite pronoun τις, τι, may sometimes be translated by the English indefinite article *a, an*: ἀνθρώπος τις, *a man*; it may often be translated by *some, certain*: λόγοι τινές, *certain words*.

**87. RULE 5.**—The apparent inconsistency of the accent of some forms of the indefinite relative—e. g. οὐτινος and ὧντινων—with the principles previously stated, disappears when it is remembered that the latter part of the word is enclitic.

## 88. VOCABULARY.

ἐμός	my, cf. Lat. <i>meus</i>
ἡμέτερος	our “ <i>noster</i>
σός	your ( <i>thy</i> ), cf. Lat. <i>tuus</i>
ὑμέτερος	your, cf. Lat. <i>vester</i>
αὐτοῦ	his
αὐτῆς	her
αὐτῶν	their
ὅς, ἣ, ὅ	who, which, what, cf. <i>qui, quae, quod</i>
ὅστις, ἣτις, ὅ τι	whoever, whichever, whatever
τίς; τί;	who? which? what?
τις, τι	some, any
ἄγω	<i>I lead</i> (Lat. <i>ago</i> )
λέγω	<i>I say, I call</i>
οἰκία	house (Lat. <i>vicus</i> , Engl. termination -wich or -wick in names of places)
στρατιά	army

## 89. EXERCISE.

1. ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφὸς ἀγαθὸς ἐστίν. 2. ὁ ἀγαθὸς φίλος σου πέμπει μοι δῶρα. 3. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγει τὴν στρατιὰν ἐπὶ τὴν μακρὰν γέφυραν. 4. τίνες εἰσὶν οὗτοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ τί λέγουσιν; 5. ταῦτά ἐστιν ἃ ἐγὼ γράφω (*Haec sunt quae ego scribo*).

1. Who was writing letters? 2. Some men were writing them. 3. My brother is in your house. 4. The general remains in his house. 5. I see the gifts which you are sending to us.



## LESSON XVIII.

*Reflexive Pronouns.—Numerals.—First ten Cardinals and Ordinals.—Declension of εἰς, δύο, τρεῖς, τέσσαρες.*

Grammar: §§ 266 with a, 288, 290, 683.

## 90. DECLENSION of the Reflexive Pronouns.

	<i>myself</i>	<i>thyself</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself</i>
S. G.	ἐμαυτοῦ, -ης	σεαυτοῦ, -ης	ἐαυτοῦ, -ης
D.	ἐμαυτῷ, -ῇ	σεαυτῷ, -ῇ	ἐαυτῷ, -ῇ
A.	ἐμαυτόν, -ήν	σεαυτόν, -ήν	ἐαυτόν, -ήν, -ό
	<i>ourselves</i>	<i>yourselves</i>	<i>themselves</i>
P. G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ἐαυτῶν or σφῶν αὐτῶν
D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ἐαυτοῖς, -αῖς or σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾶς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾶς	ἐαυτούς, -ᾶς, -ά or σφᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾶς

REMARK.—The place of a nominative singular of the reflexive pronoun in all persons and in both numbers is supplied by αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτοί, αὐταί.

## 91. The first four Cardinal Numbers declined.

<i>one</i>	<i>two</i>	<i>three</i>	<i>four</i>
εἰς    μία    ἓν	N. A. δύο	τρεῖς    τρία	τέσσαρες    τέσσαρα
ένός    μιᾶς    ενός	G. D. δυοῖν	τριῶν	τεσσάρων
ένί    μιῇ    ένί		τρισί	τέσσαροι
ένα    μίαν    έν		τρεῖς    τρία	τέσσαρες    τέσσαρα

REMARK.—These forms are not strictly in place at this point, as they belong mostly to the consonant declension. But they follow so closely the indefinite τὸς that they will be easily learned.

**92. RULE.**—When the reflexive pronouns are used in the genitive instead of the possessive pronouns, they take the attributive position.

### 93. VOCABULARY.

Cardinals.		Ordinals.	
εἷς, μία, ἓν	<i>one</i>	πρῶτος	<i>first</i>
δύο	<i>two</i>	δεύτερος	<i>second</i>
τρῆς, τρία	<i>three</i>	τρίτος	<i>third</i>
τέσσαρες, τέσσαρα	<i>four</i>	τέταρτος	<i>fourth</i>
πέντε	<i>five</i>	πέμπτος	<i>fifth</i>
ἕξ	<i>six</i>	ἕκτος	<i>sixth</i>
ἐπτά	<i>seven</i>	ἑβδομος	<i>seventh</i>
ὀκτώ	<i>eight</i>	ὄγδοος	<i>eighth</i>
ἐννέα	<i>nine</i>	ἑνατος	<i>ninth</i>
δέκα	<i>ten</i>	δέκατος	<i>tenth</i>
ἐμαυτοῦ		of myself	
σεαυτοῦ		of thyself	
ἐαυτοῦ		of himself	
δένδρον		tree	
ἐλαφρός 3		light	
ναύτης		sailor (naut-ical)	
οὐδέ (= οὐ-δέ)		but not, nor, not even	
οὐδεὶς }		no one, nobody	
οὐδεμία }			
οὐδέν		no thing, nothing	
φορτίον (φέρω)		burden, cargo	

### 94. EXERCISE.

1. μένομεν ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ οἰκίᾳ. 2. ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμπει τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ στρατιώτᾱς. 3. φέρω τὸ ἐμαυτοῦ φορτίον. 4. τὸ φορτίον μου ἐλαφρόν ἐστι, λέγει ὁ Χριστός. 5. δέκα δένδρα ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ νήσῳ ὀρώ.

1. What do you say to your servant? I say nothing. 2. Not one road leads upon the bridge. 3.

What were you showing to our citizens? 4. I was showing to them the Nine Roads. 5. The general was sending five soldiers as aid.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

The first house. The second street. The fifth bridge. The sixth man. The tenth soldier.

## LESSON XIX.

### *Prepositions.*

Grammar: §§ 784, 787.

**95.** PREPOSITIONS have a two-fold use:

- 1) In composition with verbs they form the very numerous compound verbs, which are a characteristic feature of the Greek language;
- 2) Joined with nouns in various cases, they define the relation of the nouns to other words more clearly than the case-endings alone could.

**96.** In Greek, many prepositions may be used with two or even with three cases, and the modification of meaning may then be thus stated: the dative with a preposition expresses an idea of *rest in*; the accusative, of *motion toward*; the genitive, of *passage from* a certain situation. Thus the general meaning of the preposition *παρά* is *near*, but this meaning is modified according to the case of the noun with which the preposition is connected, as follows:

*μένω παρὰ τῷ ἀδελφῷ μου*, I stay *beside* my brother.

τὴν ἀγγελίαν παρὰ τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμπει, he  
sends the message *to* the general.

ἄγει τὸν δούλον παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου, he leads  
the servant *from* his master.

**97.** The meanings of most of the prepositions will best be learned gradually from the vocabularies, but in this lesson a list is given of such as are used with only one case.

1. Prepositions with the genitive only :

ἀντί	<i>instead of</i>
ἀπό (Lat. <b>ab</b> )	<i>from, away from</i>
ἐκ, bef. vowels ἐξ (Lat. <b>ex</b> )	<i>from, out of</i>
πρό (Lat. <b>pro</b> )	<i>before, in front of</i>
ἄνευ	<i>without</i>
ἔνεκα	<i>because of</i>
μέχρι	<i>up to, until</i>
πλήν	<i>except</i>

For the elision of the final vowel of ἀντί, ἀπό, see 79. The last four prepositions in the above list are called improper, because they are never used in composition with verbs, which is regarded as their proper use.

2. Prepositions with the dative only :

ἐν (Lat. <b>in</b> with abl.)	<i>in, among</i>
σύν (Lat. <b>cum</b> )	<i>with</i>

3. Prepositions with accusative only :

εἰς *into, to*, cf. Lat. *in* with accus.  
ὥς *to* (only with persons)

Of the above prepositions, ἐκ, ἐν, εἰς, ὥς are proclitics (111 b, c), and ἔνεκα is postpositive, i. e., always follows its genitive.

**98. RULE.**—A preposition with its case often stands between an article and noun like an attributive adject-

tive (cf. § 28): e. g. οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἄνθρωποι, *the men on the island*. The article may also be used alone with the prepositional phrase: e. g. οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ, *the (people) on the island*.

### 99. VOCABULARY.

ἀθλος	contest
ἄθλον	prize
ἀθλητής	contestant (athlete)
βιβλίον	book (Bible, biblio-graphy)
ἔργον	work (work)
μέτρον	measure (meter)
ρόδον	rose (rhodo-dendron)
Ῥόδος	Rhodes
σχολή	leisure, school (place of learned leisure)
χρόνος	time (chrono-meter)

Add the prepositions given in § 97 and the following compound verbs:

ἀπο-δείκνυμι	<i>I show forth, appoint</i>
ἐξ-άγω	<i>I lead out, export</i>
παρ-έχω	<i>I have at hand, furnish</i>
προ-λαμβάνω	<i>I take beforehand, preoccupy</i>

### 100. EXERCISE.

1. τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἀντ' ἐκείνου ἐπέμπομεν.  
 2. πρὸ τῆς τοῦ κριτοῦ οἰκλᾶς καλὸν δένδρον ἐστίν. 3.  
 ἡ σχολή ἡμῶν παρέχει ἀθλητὰς τινας. 4. οἱ στρατιῶ-  
 ται προλαμβάνουσι τὴν νῆσον. 5. οὗτος ὁ ἀθλητής  
 ἔφερε τὸ ἄθλον ἐν πέντε ἄθλοις.

1. I see my friend among the athletes. 2. Time destroys the works of wise men. 3. He appoints Cyrus general instead of his brother. 4. We were writing in this book the dimensions of the island. 5. The island of Rhodes produces (bears) beautiful roses.

## LESSON XX.

*Augment of Verbs beginning with a Vowel or Diphthong.—Augment of Compound Verbs.*

Grammar: §§ 355, 356, 357, 360 with a.

**101.** THE augment ε has been described in Lesson XIV. This is called the syllabic augment because it adds a syllable to the verb. It is applied only to verbs beginning with a consonant. Verbs beginning with a vowel or diphthong have what is known as the temporal augment. This does not increase the number of syllables, but the length or *time* of the first syllable of the verb. Hence the name *temporal*, from Lat. *tempus*, “time.”

**102.** There follow, as illustrations of the temporal augment, the Imperfect Indic. Act. of two verbs beginning with a vowel: ἀκούω, *I hear*, and ὀλλύμι, *I destroy*. The first is a verb in -ω; the second a verb in -μι.

		Pers. Endings.	
I was hearing	ἤκουο-ν	-ν	ὤλλυ-ν
			I was destroying
you were hearing	ἤκουε-ς	-ς	ὤλλυ-ς
			you were destroying
he was hearing	ἤκουε	—	ὤλλυ
			he was destroying
both of you were hearing	ἤκούε-τον	-τον	ὤλλυ-τον
			both of you were destroying
both of them were hearing	ἤκούε-την	-την	ὤλλυ-την
			both of them were destroying
we were hearing	ἤκούο-μεν	-μεν	ὤλλυ-μεν
			we were destroying
you were hearing	ἤκούε-τε	-τε	ὤλλυ-τε
			you were destroying
they were hearing	ἤκουο-ν	-ν or -σαν	ὤλλυ-σαν
			they were destroying

Like ἤκουον inflect: ἤγον I was leading  
ἤλαυνον I was marching

**103.** In compound verbs the last letter of a preposition ending in a vowel is dropped when the verb begins with a vowel. Thus: ἀπ-άγω, *I lead away*, from ἀπό and ἄγω. This loss of the last letter of the preposition occurs also before the syllabic augment. Thus: ἀπο-δείκνυμι, *I appoint*, but impf. ἀπ-εδείκνυν. The only exceptions are περί and πρό, which always retain their final vowel. Thus: προ-λαμβάνω, *I preoccure*, impf. προ-ελάμβανον (also contracted προυλάμβανον).

#### 104. VOCABULARY.

ἀκούω	<i>I hear (acoustics)</i>
ἄσκος	<i>wine-skin</i>
γραμματικός 3	<i>grammatical</i>
γραμματική	<i>grammar</i>
διά prep. w. gen.	<i>through, across</i>
διά prep. w. acc.	<i>because of</i>
ἐλαύνω	trans. <i>I drive</i> , intrans. <i>I march</i>
ἐξ-ελαύνω	<i>I march out, I march forth</i>
νέος 3	<i>new (Lat. novus)</i>
οἶνος	<i>wine (Lat. vinum, Engl. wine)</i>
ὀλλῦμι	<i>I destroy</i>
ἀπ-όλλῦμι	<i>I destroy utterly (Apollyon)</i>
παλαιός 3	<i>old (Palaeo-graphy)</i>
φεύγω	<i>I flee (Lat. fugio)</i>
φυγή	<i>flight (Lat. fuga)</i>

#### 105. EXERCISE.

1. μανθάνομεν τὴν γραμματικὴν (τέχνην). μανθάνομεν τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν γραμματικὴν. 2. διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἐξ-ἤλαυνε Κῦρος. 3. ἐφεύγομεν εἰς μικρὰν τινα

νήσον. 4. διὰ τοῦτο ἔφευγον οἱ στρατιῶται. 5. ὁ νέος οἶνος ἀπόλλυσι τοὺς παλαιοὺς ἀσκούς. τί ἀπώλλυ τοὺς παλαιοὺς ἀσκούς ;

1. The general was marching forth up to a certain river. 2. On this account I was remaining. 3. The flight of the soldiers was (ἦν) cowardly (κακός). 4. What soldiers were destroying these bridges? 5. We were destroying the boat of the sailors.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

We were leading. They were marching. You were hearing. I was destroying. Who was showing? We were preoccupying.

## LESSON XXI.

*Middle Voice.—Present Indic. Midd. of λῶ and δείκνυμι.—Personal Endings of Present Middle and Present Passive.*

Grammar: §§ 298 with a, 809, 811, 812, 813, 818.

**106.** BESIDES the Active and the Passive, most Greek verbs have a third voice, called the Middle.

The Middle Voice signifies in general that the doer performs an action *upon* or *for* himself (Direct or Indirect Middle). Sometimes the meaning of a verb is almost the same in the Middle and Active voices; sometimes it is quite different. Verbs in the Middle voice often govern the accusative, if they govern it in the Active.



**107.** Though there are three voices in Greek, there are but two sets of personal endings: one for the Active, the other for the Middle. Hence one set of forms serves for the middle and passive voices in four tenses: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect.

**108.** Many Greek verbs have no active voice, but are used only in the middle. These are called Middle Deponents.

<b>109.</b>		Personal Endings.	
λῶμαι	I loose myself	-μαι	δείκνυμαι I show myself
λύει (for λύεσαι)	you loose yourself	-σαι	δείκνυσαι you show yourself
λύεται	he looses himself	-ται	δείκνυται he shows himself
λύεσθον	both of you loose yourselves	-σθον	δείκνυσθον both of you show yourselves
λύεσθον	both of them loose themselves	-σθον	δείκνυσθον both of them show themselves
λύόμεθα	we loose ourselves	-μεθα	δεικνύμεθα we show ourselves
λύεσθε	you loose yourselves	-σθε	δείκνυσθε you show yourselves
λύονται	they loose themselves	-νται	δείκνυνται they show themselves

For explanation of the present-stems λῶ- and δείκνυ-, and of the personal endings, see §§ 62 and 63.

**110.** In the above paradigms λῶμαι may mean *I loose myself* (direct middle); or, *I loose for myself, ransom* (indirect middle); or, yet again, *I am being loosed* (passive). In translation, the connection must show which is meant.

**111. RULE.**—The agent with a verb in the passive voice is regularly expressed by ὑπό with the genitive.

## 112. VOCABULARY.

βαίνω	<i>walk, go</i>
βάλλω	<i>throw</i>
δια-βαίνω	<i>I go through, I cross</i>
δίκτυον	<i>net</i>
ἔρχομαι (deponent)	<i>I come</i>
ἡμέρᾱ	<i>day</i>
θύελλα	<i>gust, tempest</i>
οἱ μὲν—οἱ δέ	<i>some—others</i>
παύω	<i>I put a stop to, I arrest</i>
παύομαι (direct midd.)	<i>I leave off, cease from, lit. arrest myself (governs gen.)</i>
ὑπό prep. w. gen. of agent	<i>by</i> (cf. Lat. <i>a</i> w. abl. of agent)
ὑπό prep. w. dat.	<i>under</i> (cf. Lat. <i>sub</i> w. abl.)
ὑπό prep. w. acc.	<i>under</i> (cf. Lat. <i>sub</i> w. acc.)
φόβος	<i>fear</i> (hydro-phobia)

## 113. EXERCISE.

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς διέβαινε τὴν χώραν σὺν τοῖς στρατιώταις. 2. ὁ ἵππος παύεται τοῦ φόβου. 3. οὗτος ὁ ἀγαθὸς πολίτης λύει τοὺς δούλους. 4. ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐλύομεν. 5. βάλλουσιν οἱ ναῦται τὰ δίκτυα εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.

1. On account of the storm the soldiers were throwing the cargo out of the transport. 2. My brother throws himself into the sea. 3. My letter is being written by a slave. 4. The messengers are being sent from the presence of (§ 96) the general. 5. The master was arresting the fear of his slaves.

## LESSON XXII.

*Imperfect Indicative Middle and Passive of λύω  
and δεικνύμι.*

Grammar: §§ 876, 824, 828, 829, 830, 832.

114.		Personal Endings.	
ἐ-λύ-ό-μην	I was ransoming	-μην	ἐ-δεικνύ-μην I was manifesting
ἐ-λύ-ου (for ἐ-λυε-σο)	you were ransoming	-σο	ἐ-δεικνυ-σο you were manifesting
ἐ-λύε-το	he was ransoming	-το	ἐ-δεικνυ-το he was manifesting
ἐ-λύε-σθον	both of you were ransoming	-σθον	ἐ-δεικνυ-σθον both of you were manifesting
ἐ-λυέ-σθην	both of them were ransoming	-σθην	ἐ-δεικνύ-σθην both of them were manifesting
ἐ-λυό-μεθα	we were ransoming	-μεθα	ἐ-δεικνύ-μεθα we were manifesting
ἐ-λύε-σθε	you were ransoming	-σθε	ἐ-δεικνυ-σθε you were manifesting
ἐ-λύο-ντο	they were ransoming	-ντο	ἐ-δεικνυ-ντο they were manifesting

115. It was stated in § 106 that the meaning of the middle voice sometimes diverges widely, sometimes differs little, from that of the active. In the above paradigm, the indirect middle (813) ἐλυόμην, *I was loosing for myself*, may yield the apparently active meaning of *I was ransoming*; and the subjective middle (814) ἐδεικνύμην yields a sense scarcely different from the active.

It must not be forgotten that all the above forms may have the passive meaning, so that ἐλυόμην may

mean *I was being loosed* and ἐδεικνύμην *I was being shown*.

Notice in each form, as indicated by hyphens, the elements: augment, present-stem, and personal ending. The stem of the first verb is λῡ-; that of the second, δεικνυ-. The first is a verb in -ω; the second, a verb in -μι.

**116. RULE 1.**—The dative is used to denote the time at which something is, or is done. [782]

**117. RULE 2.**—The predicate noun, in general, is without the article. [669]

### 118. VOCABULARY.

ἀγγελία	<i>message, tidings</i>
Ἀγγλία	<i>England</i>
Ἀμερική	<i>America</i>
ἐκκλησιᾶ	(1) <i>assembly</i> , (2) <i>church</i> (ecclesia-stic)
ἥλιος	<i>sun</i> (helio-trope)
μάχομαι (deponent)	<i>I fight</i> (logo-machy)
ὄρνυμι	<i>I rouse</i>
ὀρνυμαι (direct midd.)	<i>I rise</i>
οὐρανός	<i>heaven, sky</i>
Πέρσης	<i>Persian</i>
πορίζω	<i>I furnish, I procure</i>
πορίζομαι (indir. midd.)	<i>I provide myself with</i>
σίτος, pl. τὰ σῖτα	<i>grain, provisions</i>
φαίνω	<i>I show</i>
φαίνομαι (direct midd.)	<i>I show myself, I appear</i>

### 119. EXERCISE.

1. ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπορίζετο σῖτα ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς τῶν Περσῶν. 2. μαχόμεθα πρὸ Χριστοῦ καὶ τῆς Ἐκκλησιᾶς αὐτοῦ. 3. τῇ τετάρτῃ ὥρᾱ (hour) ἐφαίνετο ὁ ἥλιος ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ. 4. ὁ κίνδυνος ὥρνυ τὸν φόβον τῶν πολιτῶν. 5. ἡ χώρᾱ ἡμῶν λέγεται Ἀμερική.

1. We were providing food. We were providing ourselves with food. Food was being provided by us. 2. No one fights for us. 3. The fear of God is the beginning of wisdom. 4. This tidings appears good. 5. We came to our country through no small dangers.

## LESSON XXIII.

### *Classified Vocabulary of Words in Lessons I-XXII.*

#### 120.

##### NOUNS.

Ἀγγλιᾶ	England	δοῦλος	slave
ἀγγελιᾶ	message, tidings	δῶρον	gift
ἄγγελος	messenger	εἰρήνη	peace
ἀδελφός	brother	ἐκκλησιᾶ	assembly, church
ἀθλητής	athlete	ἐπιστολή	letter
ἅθλον	prize	ἔργον	work
ἅθλος	contest	Ἑρμῆς	Hermes
Ἀμερικῇ	America	ἥλιος	sun
ἄνθρωπος	man	ἡμέρᾱ	day
ἀπόστολος	apostle	θάλασσα	sea
ἄργυρος	silver [province]	θεός	god
ἀρχή	beginning, rule,	θύελλα	gust, tempest
ἄσκος	wine-skin	ἵππος	horse
βοήθεια	aid	ἵπποπόταμος	river-horse
βιβλίον	book	κίνδυνος	danger
γέφυρα	bridge	κριτής	judge
γῆ	earth	Κύρος	Cyrus
γλῶσσα	tongue	κώμη	village
γράμματα (n. pl.)	writings, letters	λόγος	word, narrative
δένδρον	tree	μαθήματα (n. pl.)	lessons
δεσπότης	master	μέτρον	measure
δῆμος	people	μοῦσα	muse
δίκτυον	net	ναύτης	sailor
		νεᾶνιᾶς	youth

<b>νησος</b> fem.	<i>island</i>
<b>νοῦς</b>	<i>mind</i>
<b>ὁδός</b> fem.	<i>way</i>
<b>οἰκία</b>	<i>house</i>
<b>οἶνος</b>	<i>wine</i>
<b>ὀνόματα</b> (ntr. pl.)	<i>names</i>
<b>ὀστοῦν</b>	<i>bone</i>
<b>οὐρανός</b>	<i>sky, heaven</i>
<b>Παῦλος</b>	<i>Paul</i>
<b>Πέρσης</b>	<i>Persian</i>
<b>πέτρα</b>	<i>rock</i>
<b>πλοῖον</b>	<i>transport</i>
<b>πολίτης</b>	<i>citizen</i>
<b>ποταμός</b>	<i>river</i>
<b>πράγματα</b> (n. pl.)	<i>things</i>
<b>πύλη</b>	<i>gate</i>
<b>Ῥόδος</b> fem.	<i>Rhodes</i>
<b>ῥόδον</b>	<i>rose</i>
<b>σίτος</b> , pl. <b>σίτα</b>	<i>grain, food</i>
<b>σκιὰ</b>	<i>shadow</i>
<b>σοφία</b>	<i>wisdom</i>
<b>στρατηγός</b>	<i>general</i>
<b>στρατιὰ</b>	<i>army</i>
<b>στρατιώτης</b>	<i>soldier</i>
<b>σχολή</b>	<i>leisure, school</i>
<b>τέχνη</b>	<i>art</i>
<b>τιμή</b>	<i>honor</i>
<b>υἱός</b>	<i>son</i>
<b>φιλία</b>	<i>friendship</i>
<b>φίλος</b>	<i>friend</i>
<b>φόβος</b>	<i>fear</i>
<b>φορτίον</b>	<i>burden</i>
<b>φυγή</b>	<i>flight</i>
<b>χρόνος</b>	<i>time</i>
<b>χώρα</b>	<i>country</i>
<b>ὥρα</b>	<i>hour</i>

## ADJECTIVES.

## (a) Of quality.

<b>ἀγαθός</b>	<i>good, brave</i>
<b>ἀπλοῦς</b>	<i>simple</i>

<b>ἀργυροῦς</b>	<i>of silver</i>
<b>γραμματικός</b>	<i>grammatical</i>
<b>ἐλαφρός</b>	<i>light</i>
<b>κακός</b>	<i>bad, cowardly</i>
<b>καλός</b>	<i>beautiful, comely</i>
<b>μακρός</b>	<i>long</i>
<b>μικρός</b>	<i>small</i>
<b>νέος</b>	<i>new</i>
<b>ὁ, ἡ, τό</b>	<i>the</i>
<b>παλαιός</b>	<i>old</i>
<b>φίλιος</b>	<i>friendly</i>

## (b) Of number.

## 1. Cardinal.

<b>εἷς</b>	<i>one</i>
<b>οὐδεὶς</b>	<i>no one</i>
<b>δύο</b>	<i>two</i>
<b>τρεις</b>	<i>three</i>
<b>τέσσαρες</b>	<i>four</i>
<b>πέντε</b>	<i>five</i>
<b>ἕξ</b>	<i>six</i>
<b>ἐπτά</b>	<i>seven</i>
<b>ὀκτώ</b>	<i>eight</i>
<b>ἐννέα</b>	<i>nine</i>
<b>δέκα</b>	<i>ten</i>

## 2. Ordinal.

<b>πρώτος</b>	<i>first</i>
<b>δεύτερος</b>	<i>second</i>
<b> τρίτος</b>	<i>third</i>
<b>τέταρτος</b>	<i>fourth</i>
<b>πέμπτος</b>	<i>fifth</i>
<b>ἕκτος</b>	<i>sixth</i>
<b>ἑβδομος</b>	<i>seventh</i>
<b>ὀγδοος</b>	<i>eighth</i>
<b>ἐνατος</b>	<i>ninth</i>
<b>δέκατος</b>	<i>tenth</i>

## PRONOUNS.

<b>ἄλλος</b>	<i>other</i>
<b>αὐτός</b>	<i>self</i>

ἑαυτοῦ	of himself
ἐγώ	I
ἐκεῖνος	that, he
ἑμαυτοῦ	of myself
ἐμός	my
ἡμεῖς	we
ἡμέτερος	our
ὅδε	this (one)
ὁ μὲν—ὁ δέ	the one—the other
οἱ μὲν—οἱ δέ	some—others
ὅς, ἣ, ὅ	who, which
ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι	whoever, which- ever
οὗ	of himself
οὗτος	this, he
σεαυτοῦ	of thyself
σός	thy (your)
σύ	thou (you)
τίς, τί	who? what?
τις, τι	some, any
ὑμεῖς	you
ὑμέτερος	your

## VERBS.

ἄγω	I lead
ἀκούω	I hear [point
ἀπο-δείκνυμι	I show forth, ap-
ἀπ-όλλυμι	I destroy
βαίνω	I step
βάλλω	I throw
γράφω	I write
δείκνυμι	I show
δείκνυμαι (dir. m.)	I show myself
δείκνυμαι (subj. m.)	I manifest
δια-βαίνω	I cross
εἰμί	I am
ἐλαύνω	I drive, I march
ἐξ-άγω	I lead out
ἐξ-ελαύνω	I march forth
έρχομαι (dep.)	I come
ἔχω	I have

ἦν	I was, he was
λαμβάνω	I take
λέγω	I call, I say
λύω	I loose, I destroy
λύομαι (dir. m.)	I loose myself
λύομαι (indir. m.)	I ransom
μανθάνω	I learn
μάχομαι (dep.)	I fight
μένω	I remain
δλλῡμι	I destroy
δλλυμαι (dir. m.)	I perish
δρνῡμι	I rouse, I stir up
δρνυμαι (dir. m.)	I arise
ὄρω	I see
παρ-έχω	I furnish
παύω	I arrest
παύομαι (dir. m.)	I cease from
πορίζω	I furnish
πορίζομαι (indir. midd.)	I provide myself with
πέμπω	I send
φαίνω	I show
φαίνομαι (dir. m.)	I appear
φέρω	I bear
φεύγω	I flee
φημί	I say

## ADVERBS.

ἐκεῖ	there
οὐ, οὐκ	no, not
οὕτω, οὕτως	thus (as precedes)
πότε;	when?
ποῦ;	where?
πῶς;	how?
τί;	what? why?
ὥδε	thus (as follows)

## PREPOSITIONS.

ἀνευ	without
ἀντί	instead of

ἀπό	from, away from	ὑπό	under, w. pass. vb., by
διά	through	ὡς (w. persons only)	to
εἰς	into	CONJUNCTIONS.	
ἐκ, ἐξ	out, out of	ἀλλά	but
ἐν	in	δέ	but (and)
ἐνεκα	because of	καί	and, also
ἐπί	upon	μὲν—δέ	( )—but
μέχρι	up to, until	οὐδέ	but not, nor, not even
παρά	by the side of	τε—καί	both—and
περί	about	INTERJECTION.	
πλὴν	except	ὦ	O!
πρό	before, for		
σύν	with		

**121. RULE 1.**—An adjective agrees with its substantive in case, number, and gender. [620]

**122. RULE 2.**—The substantive to which an attributive adjective belongs is often omitted. [621]

### 123. EXERCISE.

1. τὴν τῶν παλαιῶν (ἀνθρώπων) σοφίαν μανθάνομεν.
2. Κῦρος ἐξ-ήλυνεν ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ χώραν.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐπορίζοντο σῖτον καὶ οἶνον ἄνευ κινδύνου.
4. Τίς Κῦρον στρατηγὸν ταύτης τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀπ-εδείκνυ ;
5. Δαρείος ἀπεδείκνυ αὐτόν.

1. This man is a brother of that athlete. 2. We are fleeing through fear of the tempest. 3. He was leading the army into certain villages. 4. It is the tenth hour of the day. 5. I lose (ᾄλλῃμι) no (οὐδεμίαν) day.



## LESSON XXIV.

*Present Subjunctive and Present Optative of λύω, in all voices.*

Grammar: §§ 298, 299 with a, 300, 301, 314.

## 124.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.		PRESENT OPTATIVE.	
Active.	Midd. and Passive.	Active.	Midd. and Passive.
λύω	λύω-μαι	λύοι-μι	λύοι-μην
λύῃ-ς	λύῃ (for λύῃ-σαι)	λύοι-ς	λύοι-ο (for λύοι-σο)
λύῃ	λύῃ-ται	λύοι (102 b)	λύοι-το
λύῃ-τον	λύῃ-σθον	λύοι-τον	λύοι-σθον
λύῃ-τον	λύῃ-σθον	λύοι-την	λύοι-σθην
λύω-μεν	λύώ-μεθα	λύοι-μεν	λύοι-μεθα
λύῃ-τε	λύῃ-σθε	λύοι-τε	λύοι-σθε
λύω-σι	λύω-νται	λύοι-ν	λύοι-ντο

125. In the subjunctive the present-stem of λύω, λῡ̄<sup>ο</sup>|<sub>ς</sub>-, is changed to λῡ̄<sup>ω</sup>|<sub>η</sub>-, the long variable vowel <sup>ω</sup>|<sub>η</sub> taking the place of <sup>ο</sup>|<sub>ς</sub>. The endings are the same as in the present indicative.

In the optative an ι, called the mode-suffix of the optative, is affixed to the present-stem λῡ̄<sup>ο</sup>-, making λῡ̄<sup>οι</sup>-, and to this the personal endings of the past tense (§§ 60, 114) are affixed. But in the 1st sing. opt. act. the ending is -μι instead of -ν, and that in the 3d pl. opt. act. the mode-suffix is ιε instead of ι.

## RULES FOR THE EMPLOYMENT OF FINITE MODES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

**126. RULE 1.**—The indicative expresses that which *is, was, or will be*. It is used [865] when the reality of an action is affirmed, denied, or questioned: “he went”; “he did not stay”; “will he return?”

**127. RULE 2.**—The first person of the subjunctive is used to express a *request or proposal*: “let us come.” (Hortative Subjunctive.) [866, 2]

**128. RULE 3.**—The optative is used to express a wish that something may happen: [870] “may I learn!” (Optative of Desire.)

**129. VOCABULARY.**

ἄμαξα	wagon
διδάσκαλος	teacher
διδάσκω	teach (didac-tic)
εὖ adv.	well
μαθητής	learner, disciple
μετα-πέμπω	send after (to fetch)
μετα-πέμπομαι (indir. midd.)	summon
ὄπλον	utensil, arm
ὄπλα, pl. of ὄπλον	arms, armor
ὀπλίτης	heavy-armed man (hoplite)
πορεύω	carry
πορεύομαι (direct midd.)	proceed, march, of troops; ἐλαύνω being more appropriate to the general

**130. EXERCISE.**

1. πορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς εἰς ἄλλην τινα χώραν. 2. τὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὄπλα ἐφέρετο (passive) ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀμάξαις. 3. τοὺς μαθητὰς διδάσκει ὁ διδάσκα-

λος μαθήματα ἀγαθά. 4. μετα-πεμπώμεθα Κύρον ὡς (as) φίλον. 5. λύοιτε τὸν υἱόν μου.

1. Let us release these slaves. Let us ransom these slaves. 2. May these slaves be released. 3. May the hoplites destroy the bridge in the river. 4. May we learn what (αῖ) our teacher teaches. 5. Let us bear well the evils which God sends.

## LESSON XXV.

*Present Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Active of λύω.—Synopsis of Present System in the Active Voice.—Infinitive in Indirect Discourse.*

Grammar: §§ 299 b, 314, 380, 381, 382.

### 131.

IMPERATIVE.		Pers. Endings.	
2. λῦε		-θι	loose thou
3. λῦέ-τω		-τω	let him (her) loose
2. λτέ-τον		-τον	both of you loose
3. λῦέ-των		-των	let them both loose
2. λῦέ-τε		-τε	loose ye
3. λῦό-ντων		-ντων	let them loose
λῦέ-τωσαν		-τωσαν	

  

INFINITIVE.	
λύειν	to loose

  

PARTICIPLE.		
	loosing	
Masc.	Fem.	Ntr.
Nom. Sg. λύων	λύουσα	λύον
Nom. Pl. λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα

**132.** Synopsis of Present System Active.

Ind.	λύω	I loose, or I am loosing
"	ἔ-λυο-ν	I was loosing
Sub.	λῆω	let me loose (hortative subjunctive)
Opt.	λύοι-μι	may I loose (optative of desire)
Imv.	λῦε	loose thou
Inf.	λύειν	to loose, or to be loosing
Par.	λύων	loosing

**133.** The Imperative is the Mode of Command. Its negative is μή.

**134.** The Infinitive has a greater variety of uses in Greek than in Latin, and, in this respect, resembles more closely the English. The Infinitive often expresses Purpose in Greek. But its most common uses are those which are described as the *Infinitive in Indirect Discourse* and the *Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse*. In both of these uses the Infinitive commonly stands as the subject or object of another verb.

**135.** INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — In English we may say, "I remember to have heard," "I remember that I heard," "I remember hearing," with little or no difference in meaning. Similarly, in Greek, the words or thoughts of another may be expressed, in a dependent form, in three ways: (1) by an infinitive; (2) by a dependent clause with ὅτι or ὡς, "that"; (3) by a participle.

**136.** RULE 1.—The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse follows verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, and expresses the words or thoughts of a person in a dependent form.

REMARK.—The verb of saying or thinking is called the principal verb.

**137.** RULE 2.—The subject of the infinitive, if expressed, stands in the accusative.

[939]

**138. RULE 3.**—The subject of the infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as the subject of the principal verb. [940]

**139. RULE 4.**—The negative adverb of the hortative subjunctive, the optative of desire, and the imperative, is not οὐ, but μή. [1019, 1020]

#### 140. VOCABULARY.

ἀκούω obj. often in gen.	hear (acoustics)
ἕκαστος 3, has pred. position	each
κελεύω	command
λίθος	stone (litho-graph)
μάχη	battle
μή	not
νίκη	victory
οἶμαι (dep.)	think
πόλεμος	war (polemics)
πολέμιος 3	hostile, also as subst. enemy
σκηνή	tent (scene)
φωνή	voice (tele-phone)

#### 141. EXERCISE.

1. ἕκαστος ὁ ἄνθρωπος τὸ ἑαυτοῦ φορτίον φερέτω.
2. Μὴ λέγε ταῦτα. 3. λυόντων τὰς γεφύρας. 4. ἔλεγε τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐξ-ελαύνειν εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν.
5. οἶμαι τοὺς ναύτας φεύγειν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ.

1. Let the soldiers carry the stones. 2. Let us teach our scholars wisdom. 3. May we not flee before the enemy! 4. I think that I hear a voice. 5. Let each soldier remain in his tent.

#### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. λύομεν, λύωμεν, λύοιμεν, λυόντων, λύειν, λύων.
2. κελεύει, κελεύοι, κελευέτω, κελεύων. 3. κελεύω σε

πέμπειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 4. ἔφη ἐμὲ τὴν γέφυραν λῑν.

1. They loose, let us loose, may they loose, let him loose, to loose, loosing. 2. I destroy the bridge, I am destroying the bridge, I was destroying the bridge. 3. I say that the enemy flee. 4. Sending, writing, learning, bearing.

## LESSON XXVI.

*Present Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Middle and Passive of λῑω.—Synopsis of Present System in the Middle (and Passive) Voice.—Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.*

Grammar: §§ 314, 380, 381, 382, 938.

142.

IMPERATIVE.	Pers. Endings.	(PASSIVE.)
2. λῑου (for λῑε-σο)	-σο	be thou loosed
3. λῑέ-σθω	-σθω	let him be loosed
2. λῑε-σθον	-σθον	be both of you loosed
3. λῑέ-σθων	-σθων	let them both be loosed
2. λῑε-σθε	-σθε	be ye loosed
3. λῑέ-σθων	-σθων	let them be loosed
(λῑέ-σθωσαν)	(-σθωσαν)	

INFINITIVE.		(PASSIVE.)
λῑε-σθαι		to be loosed
PARTICIPLE.		being loosed
Masc.	Fem.	Ntr.
Nom. Sg. λῑό-μενος	λυο-μένη	λῑό-μενον
Nom. Pl. λῑό-μενοι	λῑό-μεναι	λῑό-μενα

### 143. Synopsis of Present System Middle and Passive.

		Direct Middle.	Indirect Middle.	Passive.
Ind.	λύο-μαι	I loose myself;	I ransom;	I am loosed
"	λύό-μην	I was loosing myself;	I was ransoming;	I was being loosed
Sub.	λύω-μαι	(let me loose myself;) <sup>1</sup>	(let me ransom;)	(let me be loosed)
Opt.	λύοι-μην	(may I loose myself;)	(may I ransom;)	(may I be loosed)
Imv.	λύου	loose thyself;	ransom thou;	be thou loosed
Inf.	λύε-σθαι	to loose one's self;	to ransom;	to be loosed
Par.	λύό-μενος	loosing one's self;	ransoming;	being loosed

**144. INFINITIVE NOT IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.**—The Infinitive *not in Indirect Discourse* is used as the subject or the object of a verb (like the Infinitive *in Indirect Discourse*), and the rules in §§ 137, 138, apply to the case and the omission of its subject.

**145. RULE 1.**—The Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse is used as object especially [948] with verbs which imply *power or fitness, feeling or purpose, effort or intention*, to produce (or prevent) an action.

**146. RULE 2.**—The Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse is used as subject chiefly with [949] impersonal expressions like *δοκεῖ it seems good, δεῖ, χρῆ it is necessary, ἔστι it is possible*, and the like.

**147. RULE 3.**—The negative of the Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse is μή. [1023]

### 148. VOCABULARY.

ἄμα adv., w. dat.	<i>at the same time (with)</i>
ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ	<i>at daybreak</i>
βούλομαι (dep.)	<i>wish (Lat. volo)</i>

<sup>1</sup> The meanings inclosed in parenthesis hold only in certain connections (§§ 127, 128).

δύναμαι (dep.)	<i>be able, can (dynamite)</i>
ἐθέλω	<i>am willing</i>
ἐνταῦθα	<i>there</i>
κωλύω	<i>hinder</i>
μέλλω	<i>intend</i>
νεφέλη	<i>cloud</i>
πείθω	<i>persuade</i>
πείθομαι (dir. midd.) governs dat.	<i>obey</i>
φυλάττω	<i>guard (pro-phylactic)</i>
φυλάττομαι (direct midd.)	<i>be on one's guard against</i>

Add the four impersonal verbs given in § 146.

### 149. EXERCISE.

1. μέλλω ἐξ-ελαιίνειν ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔχων τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς μου. 2. οὐ δύναμαι φέρειν ταύτην τὴν ἀγγελίαν. 3. οἱ μαθηταὶ πειθέσθων τῷ διδασκάλῳ. 4. δεῖ ἡμᾶς φεύγειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας. 5. ἡ τῶν πολεμίων νίκη ἐκώλυνεν ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα μένειν.

1. The general wished to advance at daybreak, but his soldiers were unwilling to proceed. 2. Let the slaves be loosed. 3. O scholars! obey your teachers. 4. A cloud remained for three hours (§ 156) before the sun. 5. It-is-not-possible (οὐκ ἔστι) to have food in this village.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. λύνονται, λυώμεθα, λυοίμεθα, ἐλυόμεθα. 2. πειθώμεθα, πειθοίμεθα, πείθεσθαι. 3. ἐθέλω ἔρχεσθαι. 4. βούλονται φεύγειν.

1. Let him ransom, let him be freed. 2. May they obey, I am unwilling to obey. 3. Let them wish to learn. 4. I was persuading the slave to obey his master.



## LESSON XXVII.

*Adjectives of two Endings of the Vowel-Declension.  
—Review of Present System in all Voices.—  
Irregularities in Form of the Augment.—Parti-  
ciple.*

Grammar: §§ 225, 226 (ἡσυχος only), 355 a and b, 359.

**150. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.**—Most compound adjectives of the vowel-declension, and several that are not compound, have but one form for both masculine and feminine genders, that is, are wholly of the *o*-declension.

**151. REVIEW EXERCISE.**—Write out the synopsis and inflection in the Present System of the Active and Middle (or Passive) Voice, of ἐλαύνω and κελεύω.

**152. RULE 1.**—Verbs beginning with ρ double this letter after the syllabic augment.

**153. RULE 2.**—The three verbs, βούλομαι, δύναμαι, μέλλω, sometimes have η as augment instead of ε. Thus: ἡβουλόμην, *I was wishing*, ἡδυνάμην, *I was able*, ἡμελλον, *I was intending*.

**154. RULE 3.**—The two verbs ἔχω, *I have*, and ἔπομαι (dep.), *I follow*, take the syllabic augment, which contracts with the following vowel into ει. Thus: εἶχον, *I was having*, εἰπόμην, *I was following*.

**155. RULE 4.**—The participle with the article is often used as the equivalent of a noun or of a relative clause. Thus: ὁ λέγων, *the speaker*, or *he who speaks*; τὸ λεγόμενον, *that which is said*; τὸ φαινόμενον, *that*

which appears, the phenomenon; ὁ φέρων, the bearer, or he who bears.

156. RULE 5.—The extent of time and space is put in the accusative. [720]

### 157. VOCABULARY.

ἀθάνατος 2	immortal
γάρ (postpositive)	for
δέχομαι (deponent)	receive
ἔτι	yet, still
ἤσυχος 2	quiet
μακάριος 3	blessed
οὐκέτι (οὐκ, ἔτι)	no longer
παρασάγγης	parasang, league (about 3½ miles)
πτωχός 3	poor; also subst., poor man
ῥίπτω	throw
σοφός 3	wise
ψυχή	(1) breath, life, (2) soul (psycho-logy)

### 158. EXERCISE.

1. ἡβούλοντο ἔρχεσθαι εἰς τὴν χώραν ἡμῶν, ἡμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἠθέλομεν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς. 2. ἔρριπτον ἑαυτοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς πέτρας εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἠκούετο. 3. οἱ ἵπποι ἠλαύνοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 4. οἱ πολέμοι εἶποντο αὐτοῖς δέκα ἡμέρας μαχόμενοι. 5. ὁ φέρων ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔφερε μοι ἀγγελίαν οὐ καλᾶς.

1. We did not wish to remain there longer, for the enemies were come. 2. I had the soldiers of Clearchus and of the other generals. 3. Blessed are the poor, says the wise teacher. 4. The soul of man is immortal. 5. The bearer of this letter is our friend.

## ORAL EXERCISE.

1. I was marching, I was commanding. 2. They are driven. They are commanded. 3. Let us march. Let us command. 4. May they march. May they command. 5. Let them march. Let them command. 6. Marching. Commanding.

---

## LESSON XXVIII.

*Some uses of the Modes in Dependent Sentences :*  
 (1) *In Indirect Assertions with ὅτι and ὥς ;* (2) *in Final Clauses ;* (3) *in Conditional Sentences referring to the Future.*

Grammar: §§ 876, 879.

**159. INDIRECT ASSERTIONS.**—The Infinitive of Indirect Discourse has been treated of in Lesson XXV. Respecting the modes, in clauses with ὅτι or ὥς, the following is the Rule :

**160. RULE.**—In indirect assertions introduced by ὅτι and ὥς, “that,” the same modes [932] are in general used in indirect discourse that would be used in the direct. This is *always* so when the leading verb denotes *present* or *future* time. But if the leading verb denotes *past* time, any indicative or subjunctive of the direct discourse *may* be changed, in the indirect, to the optative of the same tense.

REMARK.—The change to the optative is never obligatory after past tenses.

**161. FINAL CLAUSES.**—Final clauses are clauses which denote purpose (final = “to the end that,” from

Lat. *finis*). Purpose is sometimes expressed in Greek by the infinitive or by a participle, but more often by a clause introduced by *ἵνα* (also *ὥς*, *ὅπως*), “in order that.” Respecting the modes in final clauses, the following is the Rule:

**162. RULE.**—Clauses expressing purpose are introduced by *ἵνα* (*ὥς*, *ὅπως*), *that*, *in order that*, and *ἵνα μή* (*ὥς μή*, *ὅπως μή*), *that not*, *in order that not*, and take the subjunctive. But if the clause depends on a past tense the optative *may be* used instead of the subjunctive. [881]

REMARK.—The change to the optative, though usual after past tenses, is not obligatory.

**163. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.**—A conditional sentence consists of two parts: the *if*-clause and the *then*-clause, or the condition and the conclusion. The condition is the dependent, the conclusion the principal, member.

Two words are used to introduce the conditional clause: *εἰ* and *εἰάν* (the latter is also written *ἤν* and *ἄν*). Both of these words mean *if*: *εἰ* being always used with the indicative and optative, *εἰάν* being always used with the subjunctive.

The negative of the conditional clause is regularly *μή*; that of the conclusion is regularly *οὐ*.

Conditional sentences referring to the future have two different forms according as there is more or less expectation of fulfillment.

**164. FUTURE CONDITION WITH MORE PROBABILITY.** **RULE 1.**—Where some expectation of fulfillment is implied, we have in the condition *εἰάν* with the subjunctive; in the conclusion, the future indicative or the imperative. [898]

REMARK.—Equivalent expressions, such as the hortative subjunctive (§ 127), may be used for the future indicative or the imperative, in the conclusion.

**165. FUTURE CONDITION WITH LESS PROBABILITY. RULE 2.—**Where no expectation of fulfillment is implied, we have in the condition *εἰ* with the optative; in the conclusion, the optative with *ἄν*. [900]

REMARK.—There is no adequate translation for this adverb *ἄν*, taken by itself. Its effect, with the optative, is given in English by “would,” “should,” and sometimes by “may.”

### 166. VOCABULARY.

ἀγγέλλω	announce
ἀπ-αγγέλλω	report, announce
διώκω	pursue
εἰάν	if (w. subj.)
εἰ (proclitic)	if (w. indic. and opt.)
εὐθύς	straightway
ἵνα	that, in order that (cf. Lat. <i>ut</i> )
κατα-λαμβάνω	overtake
μή	not
ὅτι	that, because (cf. <i>quod</i> )
πρός prep. w. gen., dat., and acc.	orig. signif. confronting
πρός w. acc.	to, against, toward
στάδιον, pl. οἱ στάδιοι	stade, measure of length = 606 ft.
σταθμός	(1) station, (2) day's march
ταχέως	quickly
τρέχω	run

### 167. EXERCISE.

1. λέγε εὐθύς, εἰάν τι βούλῃ. 2. εἰάν τι βούληται, λεγέτω. 3. εἰάν τι βούλωνται οἱ πολῖται, λεγόντων. 4.

ἐὰν διώκωσιν ἡμᾶς οἱ πολέμοι, φεύγωμεν ταχέως εἰς τὴν νῆσον. 5. εἰ γράφοις πρὸς με, ἐρχοίμην ἄν. 6. εἰ γράφοιεν ἐπιστολὰς, πέμποιμι ἂν αὐτάς. 7. τρέχωμεν ταχέως διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἵνα μὴ καταλαμβάνωσιν ἡμᾶς οἱ πολέμοι. 8. τὴν γέφυραν ἔλυνεν, ἵνα μὴ οἱ στρατιῶται δια-βαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν. 9. Κῦρος ἔρχεται. 10. ἀπ-αγγέλλουσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι ὅτι Κῦρος ἔρχεται. 11. ἀπ-ήγγελλον οἱ ἄγγελοι ὅτι Κῦρος { ἔρχοιτο. 12. οὐ πέμπω στρατιώτᾱς, λέγει ὁ στρατηγός. 13. ἀπ-αγγέλλουσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς οὐ πέμπει στρατιώτᾱς. 14. ἀπ-ήγγελλον οἱ ἄγγελοι ὅτι οὐ { πέμπει ὁ στρατηγὸς στρατιώτᾱς.

## LESSON XXIX.

*Verbs in -μι: Present System of δεικνῦμι in all Voices.*

Grammar: § 332; Review §§ 376, 379, 380, 381, 382; 385, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7; 414.

**168.** THE present system of λύω, the model verb in -ω, has now been completed. The next five lessons will be occupied with the present system of verbs in -μι. The characteristic feature of the -μι conjugation, an older and simpler formation than that in -ω, is that the *present-stem*, to which the endings are affixed, does not end in a variable vowel.

The first verb taken up will be δεικνῦμι, *I show*. The beginning is made with this verb because some

of its forms have been already learned, in parallel arrangement with corresponding forms of *λύω*, and because it resembles *λύω* more closely, in the subjunctive and optative, than the verbs which are to follow.

The inflection of *δείκνυμι* in all voices is best learned from the paradigms in the grammar. The synopsis only is given here.

### 169. SYNOPSIS OF *δείκνυμι*, PRESENT-STEM *δαικνυ-*.

	Active.		Midd. & Pass.	Passive.
Prs.	<i>δείκνυμι</i>	I show	<i>δείκνυμαι</i>	I am shown
Ipf.	<i>ἔδεικνύν</i>	I was showing	<i>ἔδαικνύμην</i>	I was shown
Sub.	<i>δαικνύω</i>	(let me show)	<i>δαικνύωμαι</i>	(let me be shown)
Opt.	<i>δαικνύοιμι</i>	(may I show)	<i>δαικνυόμην</i>	(may I be shown)
Imv.	<i>δείκνυ</i>	show thou	<i>δείκνυσθ</i>	be thou shown
Inf.	<i>δαικνύναι</i>	to show	<i>δαικνυσθαι</i>	to be shown
Ptc.	<i>δαικνύς</i>	showing	<i>δαικνύμενος</i>	being shown

The meanings of the subjunctive and optative, inclosed in parenthesis, hold good only in certain connections. The meanings of the middle voice are not given, because the middle voice of *δείκνυμι* is ordinarily, in signification, only an emphatic active.

Observe that infinitives in *-ναι* accent the penult, and that the present participle active of *-μι* verbs is oxytone.

**170. RULE.**—The dative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument*, the *cause* and the *manner*. [776]

**REMARK.**—The dative corresponds, in this use, to the Latin ablative.

### 171. VOCABULARY.

<i>Ἀσία</i>	<i>Asia</i>
<i>δάκτυλος</i>	<i>finger</i> (ptero-dactyl)
<i>Ἑλλήσποντος</i>	<i>Dardanelles, Hellespont</i>

Εὐρώπη	<i>Europe</i>
ζεύγνυμι	<i>join (Lat. jungo)</i>
ζυγόν	<i>yoke (Lat. jugum)</i>
ἤκω	<i>am come, have come</i>
καρπός	<i>fruit, crop</i>
μίγνυμι	<i>mix (Lat. misceo)</i>
Ξέρξης	<i>Xerxes</i>
οἶχομαι	<i>am gone, have gone</i>
ὄμβρος	<i>rain, shower (Lat. imber)</i>
ρήγνυμι	<i>break (Lat. frango)</i>

## 172. EXERCISE.

1. Ξέρξης, ὁ Πέρσης, τὸν Ἑλλάσποντον πλοίοις ἐζεύγνυ ἵνα διαβαίνοι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίᾱς εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην. 2. ὁ ἄγγελος τὴν ὁδὸν τῷ δακτύλῳ δείκνυσιν. 3. οἱ καρποὶ τοῖς ὄμβροις ὥλλυντο. 4. ἡ γέφυρα ἐρήγνυτο τῷ φορτίῳ ἀνθρώπων τε καὶ ἵππων. 5. μῖγνυνόμεθα (midd.) ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις. 6. ὁ ἄγγελος οἶχεται. 7. ἔλεγον ἡμῖν ὅτι ὁ ἄγγελος οἶχοιτο. 8. ἐὰν βούλησθε τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαμβάνειν, δεῖ εὐθὺς διώκειν. 9. εἰ λέγοις, ἀκούοιμι ἄν. 10. εἰ φεύγοιτε, διώκοιεν ἂν οἱ ἄλλοι.

1. The rain destroys our crops. 2. The bridge of Xerxes, the Persian, was broken. 3. Let us break the gates of the village. 4. We told them that the messenger had come. 5. We have come that we may provide ourselves with provisions.

## ORAL EXERCISE.

δεικνῦ, δείκνυσο, δείκνυτε, δείκνυσθε, ἐδείκνυσαν, ἐδείκνυντο, δεικνύναι, δείκνυσθαι, δεικνύς, δεικνύμενος.

I show, they show, let us show, may we show, we must show (δεῖ w. infin.), you must show, we can show, let us not show.



## LESSON XXX.

*Verbs in -μι continued: Present System of ἵστημι in all Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 331, 373, 374 with a, 388, 414, 415, 417 with a.

**173.** THE verb ἵστημι is the most regular in its formation of all the verbs in -μι. Nowhere can the structure of the Greek verb be better studied and the stem and endings more easily separated.

**174.** SYNOPSIS OF ἵστημι, PRESENT-STEM ἵστα-.

Active.		Direct Middle.		Passive.
Prs.	ἵστημι I set	ἵσταμαι I stand		I am set
Ipf.	ἵστην I was setting	ἵτάμην I was standing		I was set
Sub.	ἵσθω (let me set)	ἵσθμαι (let me stand)		(let me be set)
Opt.	ἵσταίην (may I set)	ἵτάμην (may I stand)		(may I be set)
Imv.	ἵστη be thou setting	ἵτασο be thou standing		be thou set
Inf.	ἵσθᾶναι to be setting	ἵσασθαι to be standing		to be set
Ptc.	ἵσθς setting	ἵτάμενος standing		being set

**175. RULE 1.**—The article, in the use which corresponds in the main with the definite article in English, is called the Restrictive Article.

**176. RULE 2.**—The Restrictive Article regularly takes the place of an unemphatic possessive pronoun. [658]

**177. RULE 3.**—Proper names, being individual in their nature, do not require the article unless it is desired to mark them as previously mentioned or well known. [663]

**178. RULE 4.**—The Generic Article indicates that the noun to which it belongs designates a whole class. It must often be left untranslated in English. [659]

REMARK.—The article often, though not always, found with abstract nouns (§ 57) is the generic article.

### 179. VOCABULARY.

	Ἀθῆναι	<i>Athens</i> (Lat. <b>Athenae</b> )
	Ἀθηναῖος 3, also as subst.	<i>Athenian</i>
	ἀρετή	<i>worth, virtue, courage</i>
	βίος	<i>life</i> (bio-logy)
	δημαγωγός	<i>demagogue</i>
417 a	δύναμαι (deponent)	<i>can</i>
418 b	ἐπίσταμαι (deponent)	<i>know</i>
	κρέμαμαι (deponent)	<i>hang</i>
	κρήνη	<i>fountain</i> (Hippo- <b>crene</b> )
	ὀνίνημι	<i>benefit</i>
	οὖν (postpositive)	<i>therefore</i>
	πίμπλημι	<i>fill</i>
	πολιτεία	(1) <i>constitution</i> , (2) <i>commonwealth</i> (polity)
	πολιτικός 3, also as subst.	<i>political</i> ; as subst., <i>statesman</i>
	σώζω	<i>save</i>

### 180. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ δημαγωγοὶ τὰς πολιτείας ἀπ-ολλύασιν. 2. οἱ σοφοὶ πολιτικοὶ τὴν πολιτείαν σώζουσιν. 3. τὰς ἀμάξας λίθων ἐπίμπλασαν. 4. ἡ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀρετὴ ἐδείκνυτο οὐ λόγοις ἀλλ' ἔργοις. 5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔστη τοὺς ὀπλίτας πρὸ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ σκηνῆς. 6. μὴ πιμπλῶμεν τοὺς παλαιοὺς ἀσκοὺς νέου οἴνου. 7. δεῖ τοὺς παλαιοὺς ἀσκοὺς οἴνου παλαιοῦ πιμπλάναι. 8. Δαρεῖος Κῦρον, τὸν υἱόν, μετ-επέμπετο ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς· ὁ οὖν Κῦρος ἐπείθετο τῷ Δαρείῳ. 9. τὸν ἡμέτερον βίον πιμπλῶμεν ἔργων ἀγαθῶν. 10. οἱ Πέρσαι ἐφαίνοντο κρέμασθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων.

1. The Athenians were breaking the yoke of the Persians. 2. The rain from the sky is filling the springs. 3. What can help our state at this time? Nothing except the wisdom of our statesmen and the courage of our citizens. 4. O Athenians! break the yoke of the Persians. 5. What statesmen have we in this commonwealth? We have not one. 6. Let us save ourselves even from these dangers. 7. May the Athenians save Athens by their virtue! 8. The general was standing before his tent. 9. I could lead the soldiers against the enemies, if I should wish. 10. Statesmen must (δεῖ) know the political art.

#### ORAL EXERCISE.

ἴσθη, ἴσθη, ἴστω, ἰσάντων, ἰσάναι, ἴστασθαι, ἴσταμεν, ἴσταμεν, ἰσᾶσι, ἴσθησι, ἴστατε, ἰστάμεθα, ἰσταῖμεν, ἰσῶμεν, ἰσταίμεθα, ἰσῶμεθα.

---

### LESSON XXXI.

*Verbs in -μι continued: Present System of τίθημι and ἵημι in all Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 329, 476, 414, 419 a and c.

**181.** THE verbs τίθημι, *I place*, and ἵημι, *I send*, through their compounds and almost innumerable derivatives, form a very important element in the vocabulary of the Greek language.

The inflection of each will be learned from the grammar; the synopsis only, of the present system, is given here.

**182. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF ΤΙΘΗΜΙ (PRESENT-STEM ΤΙΘΕ-) AND ΙΗΜΙ (PRESENT-STEM ΙΕ-) IN ALL VOICES.**

	Active.	Midd. and Pass.		Active.	Midd. and Pass.
Prs.	τίθημι	τίθεμαι		ἵημι	ἵεμαι
Ipf.	ἐτίθην	ἐτιθέμην		ἵην	ἵεμην
Sub.	τιθῶ	τιθῶμαι		ἵῶ	ἵῶμαι
Opt.	τιθείην	τιθ { εἶ οἶ } μην		ἵείην	ἵ { εἶ οἶ } μην
Imv.	τίθεα	τίθεσο		ἵεα	ἵεσο
Inf.	τιθέναι	τίθεσθαι		ἵέναι	ἵεσθαι
Ptc.	τιθείς	τιθέμενος		ἵείς	ἵέμενος

**183.** The primary meaning of *τίθημι* is *I place*. The various meanings of the middle voice are mostly derived from the indirect middle, *I place for myself*. The passive is, of course, *I am placed*.

The primary meaning of *ἵημι* is *I send*. The direct middle *ἵεμαι* often yields the meaning *I hasten*, also, *I charge*, and, by a figure, *I desire*. Passive: *I am sent*.

**184. RULE 1.**—The person or thing to whose *advantage or disadvantage* anything tends, is put in the dative. [767]

**185. RULE 2.**—With *εἰμί* and *γίγνομαι*, the possessor is expressed by the dative. [768]

**186. RULE 3.**—Many verbs compounded with *ἐν*, *σύν*, *ἐπί*, and some compounded with *πρός*, *παρά*, *περί*, *ὑπό*, take a dative depending on the preposition. [775]

**187. VOCABULARY.**

ἀπό-λεκτος 2	<i>selected</i>
βάλανος ἡ	<i>acorn</i> , also <i>date</i> (of palm-tree)
βασιλείος 2	<i>royal</i>
βασιλεία ntr. pl.	<i>palace</i> , prop. <i>royal</i> (buildings)

γίγνομαι (deponent)	become, come to be (Lat. <i>gigno</i> )
ἕπομαι (deponent)	follow
ἵημι	send
ἵεμαι (dir. midd.)	hasten, charge
λῆμός	hunger, famine
λοιμός	pestilence
ποτόν	drink
προσ-έχω	attend to
τίθημι	put, place
τίθεμαι ὄπλα	ground arms
ἀπο-τίθημι	place away, lay away
ἐν-τίθημι	place in
ἐπι-τίθημι	place upon
ἐπι-τίθεμαι (deponent)	attack, set upon (w. dat.)
συν-τίθημι	place together, compose
συν-τίθεμαι (indir. midd.)	agree
ὑπο-ζύγιον	beast of draught or burden

### 188. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐ βούλονται πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ σῖτά ἐστιν αὐτοῖς. 2. συν-τιθέμεθα ἐξ-ελαύνειν ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ. 3. ἐπ-ετίθεσαν τὰ φορτία τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. 4. ἰώμεθα ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας, μαχόμενοι πρὸ τῶν ἡμετέρων οἰκιῶν. 5. τιθώμεθα τὰ ὄπλα. 6. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ τὰ βασίλεια ἦν. 7. τὰς ἀπολέκτους βαλάνους τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀπ-ετίθεσαν. 8. προσ-έχωμεν τὸν νοῦν τοῖς σοφοῖς λόγοις. 9. ἡ νίκη τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις γίγνεται. 10. οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπ-ώλλυντο λῆμῳ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν σῖτα.

1. The selected dates are laid away for the masters. 2. Let us charge upon the enemy (pl.) if we wish them to flee. 3. They were placing food and drink in the transports. 4. We, the hoplites, were attacking our enemies. 5. Let chosen men charge upon the gates of the village.

## ORAL EXERCISE.

1. τίθει, τίθεσο, ἐτίθει, ἐτίθετο, τιθέᾱσι, τίθενται, ἐτίθεσαν, ἐτίθεντο, τιθῶμεν, τιθεῖμεν, τιθώμεθα. 2. ἔμεθα, ἰώμεθα, ἰοίμεθα, ἰέναι, ἔεσθαι, τίς, ἔμενος.

1. I am placing, I am placed, let us place, let us be placed, may we place, may we be placed. 2. Let him send, let him be sent, to send, to charge, to be sent, sending, charging.

## LESSON XXXII.

*Verbs in -μι continued: Present System of δίδωμι in all Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 330, 419 a.

## 189. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF δίδωμι IN ALL VOICES.

Active.		Midd. and Pass.	Passive.
Prs. δίδωμι	I give	δίδομαι	I am given
Ip̄f. ἔδιδουν	I was giving	ἔδιδόμην	I was given
Sub. δίδω	(let me give)	διδώμαι	(let me be given)
Opt. δίδοίην	(may I give)	διδόμην	(may I be given)
Imv. δίδου	give thou	δίδοσο	be thou given
Inf. διδόναι	to be giving	δίδοσθαι	to be given
Ptc. δίδούς	giving	διδόμενος	being given

## 190. VOCABULARY.

ἀν-αρίθμητος 2

δίδωμι

ἀπο-δίδωμι

*innumerable*

*give (Lat. do, dare)*

*give back, pay (cf. Lat. reddo)*

δια-δίδωμι	<i>distribute</i>
ἐκ-δίδωμι	<i>give out ; intrans. issue, empty</i>
παρα-δίδωμι	<i>give over, surrender</i>
προ-δίδωμι	<i>give forth, betray (Lat. pro-do)</i>
προδότης	<i>traitor (Lat. proditor)</i>
ἔπομαι (dep.)	<i>follow</i>
εὖ	<i>well</i>
Εὖξεινος (εὖ and ξένος) 2	<i>Euxine (lit. hospitable)</i>
μᾶλλον—ἢ	<i>more—than, rather—than</i>
ἢ	<i>or ; after comparatives, than</i>
μισθός	<i>pay</i>
μισθο-φόρος 2, and subst.	<i>pay-bearing ; as subst. hired soldier</i>
ξένος	<i>(1) stranger, (2) hired soldier, (3) guest-friend</i>
πολλοί (pl.) 3	<i>many</i>
πόνος	<i>toil</i>
πόντος	<i>sea, open sea</i>
χρήματα (ntr. pl.)	<i>money</i>

## 191. EXERCISE.

1. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος τοῖς μισθοφόροις πολλὰ χρήματα ἀπο-δίδωσιν. 2. οὐδὲν ἄνευ πόνου δίδωσι Θεὸς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις. 3. μακάριόν ἐστι διδόναι μᾶλλον ἢ λαμβάνειν, ἔλεγεν ὁ Χριστός. 4. ὑπὸ Θεοῦ δίδεται ἀναρίθμητα ἀγαθὰ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις. 5. Κῦρος, πολλὰ δῶρα λαμβάνων διὰ πολλά, δι-εδίδου τοῖς φίλοις. 6. τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἀνθρώπους δεῖ φέρειν εὖ ταῦτα ἃ Θεὸς δίδωσιν. 7. εἰς τὸν Εὖξεινον πόντον ἐκ-διδόασι πολλοὶ ποταμοὶ Μικρᾶς Ἀσίᾱς. 8. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν δέκα ἡμερῶν ἀπ-εδίδοσαν. 9. οὐκ ἐθέλομεν παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα τοῖς πολεμίοις, τοῖς Πέρσαις. 10. διδοῖεν ἡμῖν νίκην οἱ θεοί.

1. Good men must (δεῖ) give rather than receive.  
 2. Traitors betray their own friends. 3. Let us hand over the good things which we receive. 4. If some one give us money, we are willing to follow against the Persians. 5. If we should give up our arms, what would you give us?

## ORAL EXERCISE.

δίδωσι, διδῶσι, δίδου, δίδοσο, ἐδίδοσο, διδόναι, δίδοσθαι, διδούς, διδόμενος.

We give, we were giving, let us give, may we give.

## LESSON XXXIII.

*Verbs in -μι continued: The Small Verbs in -μι.—Present System Active of εἰμί and φημί.—Present System Middle of κείμαι and ἤμαι.*

Grammar: §§ 478, 481, 482, 483.

192. THE synopses only, of the above-named verbs, are given here; the inflection is to be learned from the grammar.

εἰμί, pres. stem εἶσ-.	φημί, pres. stem φα-.	κείμαι, pres. stem κει-.	ἤμαι, pres. stem ἦσ-.
Prs. εἰμί	φημί	κείμαι	ἤμαι
Ipf. ἦν	ἔφην	ἔκειμην	ἤμην
Sub. ᾶ	φῶ	κέωμαι	—
Opt. εἴην	φάην	κεόμην	—
Imv. ἴσθι	{ φαθί φάθι	κείσο	ἦσο
Inf. εἶναι	φάναι	κεῖσθαι	ἦσθαι
Ptc. ὢν	φάς	κείμενος	ἤμενος



**193.** For explanation of some forms of εἰμί, cf. 479. The disyllabic forms of the pres. indic. are enclitic, except after a paroxytone when they take an accent on the ultima. But the 3d sing. takes the recessive accent ἔστι in the following cases:

- 1) When it means *exists* or *is possible*.
- 2) When it begins a sentence.
- 3) When it follows οὐ, μή, εἰ, ὥς, καί.

The verb φημί bears a close resemblance, in its conjugation, to ἵστημι (Lesson XXX). The disyllabic forms of the pres. indic. are enclitic, except after a paroxytone, when they take an accent on the ultima. The verb κείμαι loses the final ι of the present-stem in the subjunctive and optative; and there is no contraction in these modes.

**194. RULE 1.**—The verbs ἐστί and εἰσί [611] are often omitted.

**195. RULE 2.**—φημί and οἶμαι, when [946, b] followed by indirect discourse, almost always take the infinitive; very rarely a clause with ὅτι.

### 196. VOCABULARY.

εἰμί	be
ἄπ-ειμι	be away (cf. Lat. <i>ab-sum</i> )
πάρ-ειμι	be at hand, be present (cf. Lat. <i>ad-sum</i> )
ἥμαι	sit
κάθ-ημαι (484)	sit down, be encamped
κείμαι	lie, be placed
ἄμφί prep. w. acc.	about (Lat. <i>amb-ire</i> )
ἄξιος 3	worthy
βασιλείᾱ	kingdom
ἐλεύθερος 3	free
ἐλευθερίᾱ	freedom

ἐνταῦθα	here
ἐργάτης (ἔργον)	worker
θάνατος	death
κατα-λαμβάνω	overtake
Κύριος	Lord ; N. T. word
λίμνη	lake
μετά prep. w. gen. and dat.	amid, general meaning
μετά w. gen.	with (implies participation)
μετά w. acc.	after (in time or order)
πόσος 3	how great ? how much ?
ὕλη	forest (Lat. <i>silva</i> )
ὕπνος	sleep (Lat. <i>somnus</i> )

## 197. EXERCISE.

1. σὺ εἶ ὁ Χριστός, ὁ υἱὸς Θεοῦ. 2. ὁ ὕπνος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ θανάτου (ἐστίν). 3. ὁ πόλεμος οὐκ ἔστιν ἄνευ κινδύνων. 4. οὐκ εἰμι ἀπόστολος ; οὐκ εἰμι ἐλεύθερος ; οὐ τὸ ἔργον μου ὑμεῖς ἐστε ἐν Κυρίῳ ; 5. μακάριοι οἱ πτωχοί, ὅτι ὑμετέρᾳ ἡ βασιλείᾳ τοῦ θεοῦ. 6. πόση ἐστὶν ἡ ὥρᾳ ; ἔστιν ὥρᾳ τρίτῃ τῆς ἡμέρᾳς. 7. πολλοὶ Κύρου φίλοι ἔκειντο ἐν θανάτῳ ἐπ' αὐτῷ (80 b)· οὕτως γὰρ ἐδείκνυσαν τὴν ἑαυτῶν φιλιᾶν. 8. ἡ κώμη κεῖται παρὰ λίμνην τινί. 9. κατα-λαμβάνουσι τοὺς βαρβάρους καθημένους ἀμφὶ κρήνην τινά. 10. ἐκάθηντο ἐν ταῖς τῶν Περσῶν κώμαις.

1. The laborer is worthy of his hire. 2. I think that I have many friends. 3. I say that you have many friends. 4. He said that he had many friends (direct discourse, "I have many friends"). 5. It is necessary that we should hear this. 6. In the forests are springs and lakes. 7. O soldiers! be brave against your enemies. 8. The enemy were fleeing, but we were pursuing. 9. Let us not sit here longer. 10. He was not present at the battle, but was absent with his soldiers (cf. 391 b).

## ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἐσμέν, ὦμεν, εἰμεν, πάρεϊσι, ἀπῆσαν (391 b), παρῆν (391 b), παρεῖναι, παρών. 2. ἔφη, κείμεθα, κεῖνται, κείσθων, ἦσθαι.

1. You are, we are, to be, to be present, to be absent. 2. The present time, the coming time. Let us be good! May we be good!

## LESSON XXXIV.

*Consonant Declension: Stems ending in a Labial or Palatal Mute.*

Grammar: §§ 163 with a, 168 (1), 169, 170; also, 24, 25, 26, 54.

## 198. I. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL OR PALATAL MUTE.

	ὁ φύλαξ (φυλακ-) watchman	ἡ φλέψ (φλεβ-) vein	ἡ σάλπιγξ (σαλπιγγ-) trumpet	ἡ θρίξ (τριχ-) hair
N.	φύλαξ (54)	φλέψ (54)	σάλπιγξ (54)	θρίξ (54 & 74 a)
G.	φύλακ-ος	φλεβ-ός	σάλπιγγ-ος	τριχ-ός
D.	φύλακ-ι	φλεβ-ί	σάλπιγγ-ι	τριχ-ί
A.	φύλακ-α	φλέβ-α	σάλπιγγ-α	τρίχ-α
V.	φύλαξ	φλέψ	σάλπιγξ	θρίξ
N. A. V.	φύλακ-ε	φλέβ-ε	σάλπιγγ-ε	τρίχ-ε
G. D.	φυλάκ-οιν	φλεβ-οῖν	σαλπίγγ-οιν	τριχ-οῖν
N. V.	φύλακ-ες	φλέβ-ες	σάλπιγγ-ες	τρίχ-ες
G.	φυλάκ-ων	φλεβ-ῶν	σαλπίγγ-ων	τριχ-ῶν
D.	φύλαξι	φλεψί	σάλπιγξι	θριξί (74 a)
A.	φύλακ-ας	φλέβ-ας	σάλπιγγ-ας	τρίχ-ας

**199.** The general principle for the accent of declined words, § 48, 1 and 2, applies to the third declension.

To this principle there is one important exception, given under the following:

**SPECIAL RULE OF ACCENT.**—**Monosyllabic stems of the third declension accent the case-ending in the genitive and dative of all numbers: -ων and -οιν taking the circumflex (129).**

# RULES OF SYNTAX:

**200. RULE 1.**—The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. [711]

**201. RULE 2.**—The meaning of the verb is often repeated in the object, which is then called the *cognate accusative*. [715]

# 202. VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

Αἰθίοψ (Αἰθιοπ-) ὁ	<i>Aethiopian</i>
ἄρπάζω	<i>snatch away, plunder (Lat. carpo, rapio)</i>
βάρβαρος 2, also subst.	<i>barbarian</i>
θρίξ (τριχ-) ἡ	<i>hair</i>
κῆρυξ (κηρυκ-)	<i>herald</i>
κηρύσσω	<i>act as κῆρυξ, proclaim</i>
Κίλισσα	<i>Cilician woman</i>
κλέπτω	<i>steal (klepto-mania)</i>
κλέπτης	<i>thief</i>
κλοπή	<i>theft</i>
κλίμαξ (κλιμακ-) ἡ	<i>ladder, staircase (climax)</i>
σάλπιγξ (σαλπιγγ-) ἡ	<i>trumpet</i>

<sup>1</sup> It is recommended that all words of the third declension, given in the vocabularies, be declined as they are met with, day by day.

σαλπίζω	<i>sound the σάλπιγξ, give signal</i>
σκῆπτρον	<i>sceptre</i>
τόξον	<i>bow</i>
τόπος	<i>place (topo-graphy)</i>
φλέψ (φλεβ-) ἡ	<i>vein (phlebo-tomy)</i>
φύλαξ (φυλακ-) ὁ	<i>warder, keeper, watchman</i>
φυλακή	<i>(1) watching, guarding, (2) garrison</i>

### 203. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ κήρυκες ἔχουσι σκῆπτρα μακρά. 2. ταῦτά ἐστι τὰ μακρὰ τόξα τῶν Αἰθιοπῶν. 3. μετεπέμπετο Κῦρος τοὺς φύλακας ἵνα φυλάττοιεν τὴν σκηνήν. 4. οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἔχουσιν τὴν τρίχα μακράν. 5. Εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φύλακας περὶ αὐτήν. 6. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔρχονται κήρυκες παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ. 7. ταύτην τὴν μάχην ἐμαχόμεθα.

1. Three watchmen stand before the tent of the general. 2. They watch the tent, and are on their guard against thieves, who plunder the country. Suddenly (ἐξαίφνης) one of the watchmen blows a blast with his trumpet. The soldiers run to the place and seize the thieves.

# LESSON XXXV.

*Third Declension continued: Masculine and Feminine Stems ending in a Lingual Mute.*

Grammar: §§ 176, 179; Review.

## 204. II. STEMS ENDING IN A LINGUAL MUTE (τ, δ, θ).

### A. Masculine and Feminine Stems.

ὁ θής (θητ-) <i>hired man</i>	ἡ ἐλπίς (ελπιδ-) <i>hope</i>	ἡ ἔρις (εριδ-) <i>strife</i>	ὁ ἡ ὄρνις (ορνιθ-) <i>bird</i>	ὁ γέρων (γεροντ-) <i>old man</i>
<div> <div>θής (54)</div> <div>θητ-ός</div> <div>θητ-ί</div> <div>θητ-α</div> <div>θής</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἐλπίς (54)</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ος</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ι</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-α</div> <div>ἐλπί (170 b)</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἔρις (54)</div> <div>ἐριδ-ος</div> <div>ἐριδ-ι</div> <div>ἔριν</div> <div>ἐρι (170 b)</div> </div>	<div> <div>ὄρνις (54)</div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ος</div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ι</div> <div>ὄρνιν</div> <div>ὄρνις</div> </div>	<div> <div>γέρων (56)</div> <div>γέροντ-ος</div> <div>γέροντ-ι</div> <div>γέροντ-α</div> <div>γέρον (170 b)</div> </div>
<div> <div>θητ-ε</div> <div>θητ-οῖν</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ε</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-οιν</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἐριδ-ε</div> <div>ἐριδ-οιν</div> </div>	<div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ε</div> <div>ὄρνιθ-οιν</div> </div>	<div> <div>γέροντ-ε</div> <div>γερόντ-οιν</div> </div>
<div> <div>θητ-ες</div> <div>θητ-ῶν</div> <div>θησί</div> <div>θητ-ας</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ες</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ων</div> <div>ἐλπίσι</div> <div>ἐλπιδ-ας</div> </div>	<div> <div>ἐριδ-ες</div> <div>ἐριδ-ων</div> <div>ἐρισι</div> <div>ἐριδ-ας</div> </div>	<div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ες</div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ων</div> <div>ὄρνισι</div> <div>ὄρνιθ-ας</div> </div>	<div> <div>γέροντ-ες</div> <div>γερόντ-ων</div> <div>γέρουσι (57)</div> <div>γέροντ-ας</div> </div>

205. RULE 1.—Many transitive verbs

[724]

may have a double object, usually a person

and a thing, both in the accusative. This occurs with

verbs of *asking, teaching, hiding, depriving.*

206. RULE 2.—A predicate-noun, when

[726]

it belongs to the object of a transitive verb, is

put in the accusative. This occurs especially with verbs

of *making, choosing, calling, considering, showing.*

## 207. VOCABULARY.

ἀσπίς (ασπιδ-) ἡ	<i>shield</i> (round and of metal)
βουλή	(1) <i>will, counsel</i> , (2) <i>council</i>
βουλεύω	<i>counsel</i>
βουλεύομαι (indir. midd.)	<i>deliberate</i>
γέρων (γεροντ-) ὁ	<i>old man</i>
γίγᾱς (γιγαντ-) ὁ	<i>giant</i> ( <i>gigant-ic</i> )
ἐλπίς (ελπιδ-) ἡ	<i>hope</i>
ἐλπίζω	<i>hope</i>
ἔρις (εριδ-) ἡ	<i>strife</i> ( <b>Eris</b> , goddess of discord)
ἐρίζω	<i>quarrel</i>
θής (θητ-) ὁ	<i>serf</i>
κνημίς (κνημῖδ-) ὁ	
pl. κνημίδες	<i>greaves</i> (usually of metal)
κενός 3	<i>empty, vain</i> ( <i>ceno-taph</i> )
κρύπτω	<i>hide</i> ( <i>crypt</i> )
νύξ (νυκτ-) ἡ	<i>night</i> (Lat. <b>nox</b> )
ὄρνις (ορνιθ-) ὁ and ἡ	<i>bird, fowl</i>
πατρίς (πατριδ-) ἡ	<i>fatherland</i> (Lat. <b>patria</b> )
πούς (ποδ-) ὁ	<i>foot</i> ( <i>pedo-meter</i> , Lat. <b>pes</b> )
σώζω	<i>save</i> ( <b>Soz-odont</b> )
τάφος	<i>tomb</i> ( <i>ceno-taph</i> )
χάρις (χαριτ-) ἡ	<i>thanks, grace</i>

## 208. EXERCISE.

1. Μὴ με τοῦτο κρύπτε. 2. Μὴ κρύπτωμεν τοὺς φίλους τὴν ἡμετέρᾱν χάριν. 3. ἀπο-δεικνύτω ὁ στρατηγὸς τούτους τοὺς τρεῖς ὀπλίτᾱς κήρῦκας. 4. ἀπο-δεικνύσθων οἱ τρεῖς ὀπλῖται κήρῦκες. 5. ταύτην τὴν κενὴν ἐλπίδα ἤλπιζεν. 6. ἡ ἐλπίς, ἣν εἶχε, κενὴ ἦν. 7. τοῖς ὀπλίταις εἰσὶν ἀσπίδες καὶ κνημίδες. 8. χάρις ἔστω τοῖς θεοῖς, οἳ τὴν πατρίδα ἡμῶν φυλάττουσιν, ὅτι οὐ πολλοὶ πολέμιοι ἔρχονται.

9. σοφοὶ σοφοὺς σώζουσιν, ἣν ὥσιν σοφοί.

1. I said to the soldiers that their fear was vain.
2. Vain are the hopes of the citizens.
3. The counsel of the old man is good.
4. The night is the hour of counsel.
5. Let us cease from war and strife.

ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ὁ τοῦ γίγαντος τάφος.
2. ἐν Θεῷ ἡ ἐλπίς μου.
3. πόθεν (whence) ἔρχονται οἱ πόλεμοι καὶ αἱ ἔριδες;
4. οὐ δεῖ τὸν θῆτα ἐξ-έρχεσθαι εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ χώρᾱν.
5. τὸν φίλον μου ἐν τοῖς γέρονσιν ὁρῶ.

1. The counsel of the old men.
2. With-the-help-of (σύν) the gods we have many hopes of safety (σωτηρίᾱ).
3. Our country is dear.
4. The child (τέκνον) of the hoplite.
5. The foot of the giant.

LESSON XXXVI.

*Third Declension continued: Neuter Stems ending in a Lingual Mute.—Present System of εἶμι.*

Grammar: §§ 183, 477 with a.

209. II. STEMS ENDING IN A LINGUAL MUTE.

B. Neuter Stems.

	τὸ σῶμα <i>body</i> (σωματ-)	τὸ ἥπαρ <i>liver</i> (ἥπατ-)	τὸ κέρας <i>horn</i> (κερᾱτ-, κερασ-)
N.	σῶμα	ἥπαρ	κέρας
G.	σώματ-ος	ἥπατ-ος	κέρᾱτ-ος (κεραος) κέρως
D.	σώματ-ι	ἥπατ-ι	κέρᾱτ-ι (κεραῖ) κέρῃ
A.	σῶμα	ἥπαρ	κέρας
V.	σῶμα	ἥπαρ	κέρας



N. A. V.	σώματ-ε	ἥπατ-ε	κέρατ-ε	(κεραε)	κέρα
G. D.	σωμάτ-οιν	ἥπάτ-οιν	κεράτ-οιν	(κεραοιν)	κεράων
N. V.	σώματ-α	ἥπατ-α	κέρατ-α	(κεραα)	κέρα
G.	σωμάτ-ων	ἥπάτ-ων	κεράτ-ων	(κεραων)	κεράων
D.	σώμασι	ἥπασι	κέρασι		
A.	σώματ-α	ἥπατ-α	κέρατ-α	(κεραα)	κέρα

Especially common in Greek are neuter nouns ending in -μα. They may be compared with Latin nouns of the third declension ending in -men, and their declension can not be made too familiar.

## 210. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF εἶμι, *I go*.

Pres. Ind.	Ipf. Ind.	Pres. Sub.	Pres. Opt.	Pres. Inv.	Pres. Inf.	Pres. Ptc.
εἶμι	ἦα	ἴω	ἴοιμι	ἴθι	ἵεναι	ἰόν

The stem of this verb is ι- (cf. Latin *i-re*), which appears in the sing. of the pres. indic. as εἰ. In the impf. indic. this lengthened form εἰ- becomes through the temporal augment η-. The subj., opt., infin., and ptc. are not -μι forms. The accent of the ptc. is irregular.

## 211. VOCABULARY.

ἀεί	<i>ever, always (aye)</i>
αἷμα (αἵματ-) τό	<i>blood (hemo-rrhage)</i>
ἄρχων (αρχοντ-) ὁ	<i>ruler (archon)</i>
γάλα (γαλακτ-) τό	<i>milk (galaxy, Lat. lac)</i>
γράμμα (γραμματ-) τό	<i>writing, letter (mono-gram)</i>
δεξιός 3	<i>right (Lat. dexter)</i>
δόγμα (δογματ-) το	<i>accepted opinion (dogma)</i>
ἐπι-βουλεύω w. dat.	<i>counsel against, plot against</i>
Θουκυδίδης	<i>Thucydides</i>
ἱστορίᾱ	<i>(1) inquiry, (2) information, (3) history</i>
κέρας (κεράτ-, κερασ-) τό	<i>(1) horn, (2) wing (of army)</i>
κτῆμα (κτηματ-) τό	<i>possession</i>
μάθημα (μαθηματ-) τό	<i>lesson</i>

μέλι (μελιτ-) τό	<i>honey</i> (Lat. <i>mel</i> )
ὄνομα (ονοματ-) τό	<i>name</i>
οὐρα	(1) <i>tail</i> , (2) <i>rear</i> (of army)
πράγμα (πράγματ-) τό	<i>thing</i>
ῥέω	<i>flow</i>
στόμα (στοματ-) τό	(1) <i>mouth</i> , (2) <i>van</i> (of army)
σῶμα (σωματ-) τό	<i>body</i>
τίμιος 3 and 2	<i>precious</i>
τραῦμα (τραυματ-) τό	<i>wound</i>
ὔδωρ (ύδατ-) τό	<i>water</i>

## 212. EXERCISE.

1. τὰ τραύματα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τίμιον κτήμά ἐστιν.  
 2. Θουκυδίδης λέγει τὴν αὐτοῦ ἱστορίαν κτήμα *de die*. 3.  
 τὸ αἷμα ῥέει (contracted ῥεῖ) ἐκ τῶν τραυμάτων τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν. 4. τὸ μὲν στόμα τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄγει ὁ  
 ἄρχων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τὴν δὲ οὐραν ἴστησι πρὸς τῷ  
 ποταμῷ.

1. The soldiers show their wounds and blood to  
 the commander. 2. Some do not receive the dogmas  
 of the Church. 3. This land flows with milk and  
 honey (lit. flows milk and honey). 4. The general  
 marches forward, leading the right wing.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Declension continued: Stems ending in a Liquid.—Syncopated Stems in -ερ-.

Grammar: §§ 185, 188 and b.

213. III. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID.

ὁ ποιμήν (ποιμεν-) <i>shepherd</i>	ὁ δαίμων (δαιμον-) <i>divinity</i>	ὁ αἰών (αιων-) <i>age</i>	ὁ θήρ (θηρ-) <i>wild beast</i>	ὁ ῥήτωρ (ρητορ-) <i>orator</i>
ποιμήν ποιμέν-ος ποιμέν-ι ποιμέν-α ποιμήν (170 a)	δαίμων δαίμον-ος δαίμον-ι δαίμον-α δαῖμον	αἰών αἰών-ος αἰών-ι αἰών-α αἰών	θήρ θηρ-ός θηρ-ί θηρ-α θήρ	ῥήτωρ ῥήτορ-ος ῥήτορ-ι ῥήτορ-α ῥήτορ
ποιμέν-ε ποιμέν-οιν	δαίμον-ε δαιμόν-οιν	αἰών-ε αἰών-οιν	θήρ-ε θηρ-οῖν	ῥήτορ-ε ρητόρ-οιν
ποιμέν-ες ποιμέν-ων ποιμέσι ποιμέν-ας	δαίμον-ες δαιμόν-ων δαίμοσι δαίμον-ας	αἰών-ες αἰών-ων αἰώσι αἰών-ας	θήρ-ες θηρ-ών θηρ-σέ θηρ-ας	ῥήτορ-ες ρητόρ-ων ῥήτορ-σι ῥήτορ-ας

214. SYNCOPATED STEMS IN -ερ-.

	ὁ πατήρ (πατερ-) <i>father</i>	ἡ μήτηρ (μητερ-) <i>mother</i>	ἡ θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-) <i>daughter</i>	ὁ ἀνὴρ (ανερ-) <i>man</i>
N. G. D. A. V.	πατήρ πατρός πατρί πατέρ-α πάτερ	μήτηρ μητρός μητρί μητέρ-α μήτερ	θυγάτηρ θυγατρός θυγατρί θυγατέρ-α θύγατερ	ἀνὴρ ἀνδρός ἀνδρί ἄνδρα ἄνερ

N. A. V. G. D.	πατέρ-ε πατέρ-οιν	μητέρ-ε μητέρ-οιν	θυγατέρ-ε θυγατέρ-οιν	ἄνδρε ἄνδροιν
N. V. G. D. A.	πατέρ-ες πατέρ-ων πατράσι πατέρ-ας	μητέρ-ες μητέρ-ων μητράσι μητέρ-ας	θυγατέρ-ες θυγατέρ-ων θυγατράσι θυγατέρ-ας	ἄνδρες ἁνδρῶν ἁνδράσι ἁνδρας

## 215. VOCABULARY.

ἀδελφή

αἰών (αιων-) ὁ

ἄνῆρ (ανερ-) ὁ

ἁνδρεῖος ὅ

Ἄπολλων (Απολλων-)

γαστήρ (γαστερ-) ὁ

δαίμων (δαιμον-) ὁ

Ἑλλήνες (Ἑλλην-) οἱ pl.

θαυμάζω

θήρ (θηρ-) ὁ

θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-) ἡ

Μιλτιάδης

μήτηρ (μητερ-) ἡ

πατήρ (πατερ-) ὁ

πατρῶος ὅ

*sister*

*period of time, age (Lat. aevum)*

*man, hero. ἄνῆρ is man in distinction from woman, cf. Lat. vir; ἄνθρωπος is human being, man or woman, cf. Lat. homo.*

*manly, courageous*

*Apollo, god of poetry, music, and divination. He bears a bow, and destroys with its deadly arrows his own enemies and those of the gods.*

*stomach (gastric)*

*deity (demon)*

*Hellenes, Greeks*

*wonder at, admire*

*wild beast (Lat. fera)*

*daughter*

*Miltiades, the hero of Marathon, 490 B. C.*

*mother (Lat. mater)*

*father (Lat. pater)*

*paternal*

παῖς (παιδ-) ὁ, ἡ, voc. παῖ (180)	boy or girl (pedagogue)
ποιμήν (ποιμεν-) ὁ	shepherd
ῥήτωρ (ῥητορ-) ὁ	orator (Lat. rhetor)
ῥητορικός 3	rhetorical, oratorical
στέργω	love, of family affection
σωτήρ (σωτηρ-) ὁ	savior
Δαρείος	Darius
Παρύσατις (Παρυσатиδ-)	Parysatis, wife of Darius
Ἀρταξέρξης	Artaxerxes
Κῦρος	Cyrus
	} sons of Darius and Parysatis

## 216. EXERCISE.

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, Ἀρταξέρξης καὶ Κῦρος. 2. Ἐπὶ τῷ θανάτῳ τοῦ πατρός, ὁ μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης παραλαμβάνει τὴν βασιλείαν, τὸν δὲ ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφόν, τὸν Κῦρον, ἀποδείκνυσι στρατηγὸν Μικρᾶς Ἀσίᾱς. 3. Μιλτιάδην θαυμάζω, τὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων σωτήρα. 4. οἱ ῥήτορες τὴν ῥητορικὴν (τέχνην) λέγονται διδάσκειν.

1. I have no longer father and mother (use dat. of possessor). 2. These men are paternal friends. 3. The Athenians were saviors of the rest of the Greeks in the war with the Persians (war-with-the-Persians τὰ Περσικά, lit. *the Persian affairs*). 4. Children love father and mother.

## ORAL EXERCISE.

1. οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ φίλος ἐστὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τῆς ἀδελφῆς μου. 2. ὦ παῖ, ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ πατήρ σου ; ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐστίν. 3. ἐγὼ εἶμι ὁ καλὸς ποιμήν, λέγει ὁ Κύριος.

1. Who is this man? He is the father of my friend. 2. Boy, obey your father. 3. I receive not honor from men, says Christ.

# LESSON XXXVIII.

*Third Declension continued: Stems ending in -εσ- and -ασ- and in -F-.*

Grammar: §§ 190, 198.

## 217. IV. STEMS ENDING IN -εσ- AND -ασ-.

	τὸ γένος <i>race</i> (γενεσ-)	ὁ Σωκράτης <i>Socrates</i> (Σωκρατεσ-)	τὸ γέρας <i>prize</i> (γερασ-)
S. N.	γένος	Σωκράτης	γέρας
G.	(γένε-ος) γένους	(Σωκράτε-ος) Σωκράτους	(γέρα-ος) γέρας
D.	(γένε-ϊ) γένει	(Σωκράτε-ϊ) Σωκράτει	(γέρα-ϊ) γέραι
A.	γένος	(Σωκράτε-α) Σωκράτη	γέρας
V.	γένος	Σώκρατες	γέρας
Dual	(γένε-ε γένη (γενέ-οιν) γενοῖν		
P. N.	(γένε-α) γένη		(γέρα-α) γέρᾱ
G.	(γενέ-ων) γενῶν		(γερά-ων) γερῶν
D.	γένεσι		γέρασι
A.	(γένε-α) γένη		(γέρα-α) γέρᾱ

## 218. V. STEMS ENDING IN -F-.

ὁ ἥρως <i>hero</i> (ῥωF-)			ἡ πειθῶ <i>persuasion</i> (πειθοF-)
Sing.	Dual	Plur.	
ἥρως	ῥω-ε	ῥω-ες ἥρως	πειθῶ
ῥω-ος	ῥώ-οιν	ῥώ-ων	(πειθο-ος) πειθοῦς
ῥω-ϊ ῥω		ῥω-σι	(πειθο-ϊ) πειθοῖ
ῥω-α ῥω		ῥω-ας ῥως	(πειθο-α) πειθῶ
ῥως			πειθοῖ

**219. RULE 1.**—The accusative is connected with verbs, adjectives, and substantives, [718]  
to specify the part or property to which they apply.

**220. RULE 2.**—The accusative has often [719]  
the force of an adverb.

## 221. VOCABULARY.

γένος (γενεσ-) τό	<i>race, kin</i>
γέρας (γερασ-) τό	<i>gift of honor, prize</i>
εἶδος (ειδεσ-) τό	<i>form, appearance (ox-ide)</i>
Ἑλλάς (Ἑλλαδ-) ἡ	<i>Hellas, Greece</i>
ἐντεῦθεν	<i>thence</i>
ἔτος (ετεσ-) τό	<i>year</i>
εὖρος (ευρεσ-) τό	<i>breadth, width</i>
ἥρως (ἡρωφ-) ὁ	<i>hero, demigod</i>
θαυμάσιος ὁ	<i>wonderful</i>
θέρος (θερεσ-) τό	<i>summer</i>
Ἴσσοί pl.	<i>Issi, a city in Cilicia</i>
Κιλικία	<i>Cilicia, the southwest division of Asia Minor.</i>
Κύδνος	<i>Cydnus, river in Cilicia</i>
κάλλος (καλλεσ-) τό	<i>beauty</i>
μέρος (μερεσ-) τό	<i>part</i>
μῆκος (μηκεσ-) τό	<i>length</i>
μήν (μην-) ὁ	<i>month</i>
ξίφος (ξιφεσ-) τό	<i>sword</i>
οἰκούμενος ὁ	<i>inhabited, situated</i>
ὄρος (ορες-) τό	<i>mountain (oro-graphy)</i>
πειθώ (πειθοφ-) ἡ	<i>persuasion</i>
πλέθρον	<i>plethrum, measure of distance = 101 feet, or one sixth of a stade</i>
πλεθριαῖος ὁ	<i>of a plethrum</i>
πόλις ἡ	<i>city (Indiana-polis)</i>

Πύραμος	<i>Pyramus</i> , river in Asia Minor
σταθμός	(1) <i>station</i> , (2) <i>distance between stations</i> , <i>day's march</i>
συλ-λαμβάνω (σύν and λαμβάνω)	<i>apprehend</i>
τείχος (τειχεσ-) τό	<i>wall</i>
τέλος (τελεσ-) τό	<i>end</i> ; as adverbial acc., <i>finally</i>
τιτρώσκω	<i>wound</i>
ὑψηλός 3	<i>high</i>
ὑψος (ὑψεσ-) τό	<i>height</i>
χειμών (χειμων-) ὁ	<i>winter</i>
Ψάρος	<i>Psarus</i> , river in Asia Minor

## 222. EXERCISE.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ὁ Κῦρος σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας δέκα, ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα. 2. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα (290), παρασάγγας πέντε, ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. 3. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Ἴσσοὺς, πόλιν Κιλικίᾱς οἰκουμένην ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ. 4. ποταμός, Κύνδος τὸ ὄνομα, τριῶν πλέθρων (see § 228) τὸ εὖρος. 5. ποταμὸς πλεθριαῖος τὸ εὖρος. ποταμὸς ἐνὸς πλέθρου τὸ εὖρος. 6. τέλος κακῆς ἀρχῆς κακὸν ἐστίν. 7. ἄλλαι ἀπόλεκτοι βαλανοί, θαυμάσιαι εἰδός τε καὶ κάλλος ἀπ-έκειντο (were laid away) τοῖς δεσπόταις. 8. τέλος δὲ τάδε ἔλεγεν.

9. ξίφος τιτρώσκει σῶμα, τὸν δὲ νοῦν λόγος.

1. The mountains of Greece are high. 2. The days of summer and the nights of winter are long. 3. The months are parts of the year, and the days are parts of the months. 4. Not the height of (the) walls, but the courage of (the) citizens saves commonwealths. 5. I am an Athenian by birth. 6. Finally he is persuaded, and apprehends his brother.



LESSON XXXIX.

*Third Declension continued: Stems ending in a Simple Close Vowel.*

Grammar: §§ 202, 203, 205.

223. VI. STEMS IN -ι- AND -υ-.

	ἡ πόλις (πολι-) city	ὁ πῆχυς (πηχυ-) fore-arm	τὸ ἄστυ (αστυ-) town	ὁ ἰχθύς (ιχθυ-) fish
S. N.	πόλι-ς	πῆχυ-ς	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ-ς
G.	πόλε-ως	πήχε-ως	ἄστε-ως	ἰχθύ-ος
D.	(πόλε-ϊ) πόλαι	(πήχε-ϊ) πήχαι	(ἄστε-ϊ) ἄστα	ἰχθύ-ϊ
A.	πόλι-ν	πῆχυ-ν	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ-ν
V.	πόλι	πῆχυ	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ
Du.	πόλε-ε πολέ-οιν	πήχε-ε πηχέ-οιν	ἄστε-ε ἄστέ-οιν	ἰχθύ-ε ἰχθύ-οιν
P. N.	(πόλε-ες) πόλαις	(πήχε-ες) πήχαις	(ἄστε-α) ἄσται	ἰχθύ-ες
G.	πόλε-ων	πήχε-ων	ἄστε-ων	ἰχθύ-ων
D.	πόλε-σι	πήχε-σι	ἄστε-σι	ἰχθύ-σι
A.	πόλαις	πήχαις	(ἄστε-α) ἄσται	ἰχθύς

224. VOCABULARY.

Ἀθηνᾶ	Athena, guardian-goddess of Athens
ἀκρό-πολις ἡ	citadel (acropolis)
ἀνά-βασις ἡ	ascent
διά-βασις ἡ	crossing, passage
κατά-βασις	descent
ἀνά, διά, κατά	up, through, down
δύναμις ἡ	power, force
ἰσχύς ἡ	strength, might
ἰχθύς ὁ	fish

κρίσις ἡ	<i>trial, judgment (crisis)</i>
κρίνω	<i>distinguish, judge (Lat. cerno)</i>
μόνος 3	<i>alone (mono-gram)</i>
μόνον adv.	<i>only</i>
ναός	<i>temple</i>
νόμος	<i>custom, law</i>
νομίζω	<i>(1) hold as custom, (2) hold as, deem, think</i>
Ξενοφῶν (Ξενοφωντ-) ὁ	<i>Xenophon</i>
Παρθενών (Παρθενων-) ) ὁ	<i>Parthenon</i>
Πελοπόννησος ἡ	<i>Peloponnēsus</i>
πῆχυς ἡ	<i>fore-arm, cubit</i>
πράξις ἡ	<i>action, act</i>
Πυθαγόρᾱς	<i>Pythagoras, proper name</i>
Σάρδεις, only pl., αἱ	<i>Sardis</i>
στάσις ἡ	<i>faction</i>
συγ-γράφω (συν, γραφω)	<i>describe (as historian)</i>
Σύρος 3	<i>Syrian</i>
τριάκοντα	<i>thirty</i>
τύραννος	<i>usurper, tyrant</i>
τυραννίς (τυραννιδ-) ἡ	<i>usurper's rule, tyranny</i>
ὑβρις ἡ	<i>wanton violence, insolence</i>

## 225. EXERCISE.

1. Ξενοφῶν τὴν Κύρου ἀνάβασιν καὶ τὴν τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατάβασιν συγγράφει. 2. Μὴ κρίνε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐκ τῶν λόγων, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν πράξεων. 3. ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει Ἀθηνῶν ἦν ὁ Παρθενών, ναὸς Ἀθηνᾶς. 4. οὐ μόνον ἡ ἰσχὺς τὰς νύκτας δίδωσιν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ. 5. ἡ ἀνάβασις καὶ ἡ κατάβασις ἡμῖν ἐγίγνοντο δύο ἡμέρας καὶ μίαν νύκτα. 6. ἡ ὑβρις τῶν τυράννων τὰς τυραννίδας λύει. 7. μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει ἐπ' ἄλλον τινὰ ποταμόν, ἐνὸς πλέθρου τὸ εὖρος, ἐν ᾧ ἦσαν πολλοὶ ἰχθύες οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον.

8. Ἐν τοῖς Ἰσσοῖς ἔμενον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἡμέρας τρεῖς,

ἐν αἷς ἤκον ἐκ Πελοποννήσου τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες (naves) καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας, ὁ ναύαρχος (admiral).

1. Let us admire the beauty of this city. 2. The bridge is four cubits in width. 3. We were not able to see (ὄραν) fishes in that river. 4. Clearchus related (ἐξ-αγγέλλω) the trial to the Greeks. 5. War and faction destroy cities.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει, ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, πολλαὶ πόλεις. 2. ἐν πόλει μῖκρᾱ καὶ κακῇ, πολλάκις (often) πολλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ πολῖται εἰσιν.

1. In our city are many good citizens. 2. No tyrant enters (εἰσ-έρχομαι) our city.

## LESSON XL.

Grammar : §§ 207, 208, b and c.

### 226. VII. STEMS ENDING IN A DIPHTHONG.

	ὁ βασιλεύ-s <i>king</i>	ὁ ἡ βοῦ-s <i>ox, cow</i>	ἡ γραῦ-s <i>old woman</i>	ἡ ναῦ-s <i>ship</i>
N.	βασιλεύ-s	βοῦ-s	γραῦ-s	ναῦ-s
G.	βασιλέ-ως	βο-ός	γρᾱ-ός	νε-ός
D.	(βασιλέ-ϊ) βασιλεῖ	βο-ῖ	γρᾱ-ῖ	νη-ῖ
A.	βασιλέ-ᾱ	βοῦ-ν	γραῦ-ν	ναῦ-ν
V.	βασιλεῦ	βοῦ	γραῦ	ναῦ
N. A. V.	βασιλέ-ε	βό-ε	γρᾱ-ε	νη-ε
G. D.	βασιλέ-οιν	βο-οῖν	γρᾱ-οῖν	νε-οῖν
N. V.	(βασιλέ-ες) βασιλεῖς	βό-ες	γρᾱ-ες	νη-ες
G.	βασιλέ-ων	βο-ῶν	γρᾱ-ῶν	νε-ῶν
D.	βασιλεῦ-σι	βου-σί	γραυ-σί	ναυ-σί
A.	βασιλέ-ᾱς	βοῦ-s	γραῦ-s	ναῦ-s

**227. RULE 1.**—One substantive may have another depending on it in the genitive: ὁφθαλμὸς βασιλέως *the king's eye*. [728]

**228. RULE 2.**—The genitive, thus depending upon a noun, is sometimes called the adnominal genitive (*ad nomen*, lit. “to the noun”). It is also called the attributive genitive, because it limits the noun like an attributive adjective. It includes the following varieties:

- 1) Genitive of possession: οἰκῶν πατρὸς *a father's house*.
- 2) Genitive subjective (of the subject of an action): ὁ φόβος τῶν πολεμίων *the fear of the enemy* (which they feel).
- 3) Genitive objective (of the object of an action): ὁ φόβος τῶν πολεμίων *the fear of the enemy* (felt toward them).
- 4) Genitive of measure: μισθὸς τεσσάρων μηνῶν *four months' pay*.
- 5) Genitive partitive, denoting the whole of which the other substantive is a part: πολλοὶ τῶν Ἀθηναίων *many of the Athenians*.
- 6) Genitive of material: ἄμαξαι σίτου *wagon loads* (lit. *wagons*) *of corn*.

**229. RULE 3.**—The attributive genitive is often used, depending upon the words υἱός, *son*, or οἶκος (οἰκῶν), *house*, to be supplied: Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ Φιλίππου *Alexander the son of Philip*, εἰς τίνος διδασκάλου; *to what teacher's house (school)?* [730 a]

## 230. VOCABULARY.

Ἄρτεμις (Ἀρτεμιδ-) ἡ	<i>Artemis</i> (Lat. <i>Diana</i> ), virgin goddess of the chase
ἀφ-ίστημι (ἀπό, ἴστημι)	<i>set off, make to revolt</i>
ἀφ-ίσταμαι (dir. midd.)	<i>revolt</i>
Ἀχιλλεύς	<i>Achilles</i> , hero of the <i>Iliad</i>
γονεύς	<i>parent</i> (Lat. <i>genitor</i> )
γραιῦς ἡ	<i>old woman</i>
δίκαιος 3 (δίκη)	<i>just</i>
δικαιοσύνη	<i>justice</i>
δόξα	<i>fame, reputation</i>
ἑρμηνεύς ὁ	<i>interpreter</i> (hermeneutics)
ἱερεύς ὁ	<i>priest</i>
ἱερός 3	<i>holy</i> (hieroglyphic)
Ἰλιάς (Ἰλιάδ-) ἡ	<i>Iliad</i> , poem describing a part of the siege of Troy
Καλυψώ (Καλυψοφ-) ἡ (218)	<i>Calypso</i> , nymph of the sea, on whose island Odysseus was detained
Λητώ (Λητοφ-) ἡ (218)	<i>Lētō</i> (Lat. <i>Latona</i> ), mother of Apollo and Artemis
μονή (μένω)	<i>mansion</i> , lit. abiding place
Ὀδυσσεύς	<i>Odysseus</i> or <i>Ulysses</i> , of island Ithaca, hero of
Ὀδυσσεΐα	<i>Odyssey</i> , poem describing wanderings of Odysseus
ὄρμέω	<i>moor</i>
ναύς ἡ	<i>ship</i> (Lat. <i>navis</i> )
νόστος	<i>return</i>

## 231. EXERCISE.

1. τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἡ δικαιοσύνη δόξαν καὶ τιμὴν φέρει. 2. οἱ θεοὶ ἦσαν πατέρες τῶν ἡρώων. 3. Ἀπόλλων μὲν Λητοῦς ἦν υἱός, Ἄρτεμις δὲ θυγάτηρ. 4.

ἐνταῦθα αἱ ὑπὸ Κῦρου μετα-πεμπόμεναι νῆες ἔρχονται καὶ ὀρμέουσι παρὰ τῇ σκηνῇ αὐτοῦ· ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ χρόνῳ ἀφ-ίστανται οἱ μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς Κῦρον.

1. The parents of Achilles were King Pēleus and the goddess Thētis. 2. The Iliad relates (λέγει) the battles about Troy (περὶ Ἰλίου), the Odyssey the re- turn of Odysseus. 3. Odysseus was remaining on Calypso's island. 4. The king is priest of Apollo.

ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Εἰς τῶν δούλων τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Περσῶν ἐ-λέ- γετο βασιλέως ὀφθαλμός. 2. ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τοῦ πατρός μου πολλαὶ μοναὶ εἰσιν. 3. ὁ φόβος Θεοῦ ἀρχὴ σοφίᾳς. 4. ἐνταῦθα μισθὸς τριάκοντα ἡμερῶν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐ-δίδοτο.

LESSON XLI.

Third Declension concluded: Anomalous Nouns.

Grammar: §§ 172 a (learn only οὗς, παῖς, Τρώς), 216 (learn only 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 15, 20).

232.

	τὸ γόνυ (γονατ-) <i>knee</i>	ἡ γυνή (γυναικ-) <i>woman</i>	Ζεὺς (Δι-) <i>Zeus</i>	ὁ, ἡ κύων (κυον-) <i>dog</i>
N.	γόνυ	γυνή	Ζεὺς	κύων
G.	γόνατ-ος	γυναικ-ός	Δι-ός	κυν-ός
D.	γόνατ-ι	γυναικ-ί	Δι-ῖ	κυν-ί
A.	γόνυ	γυναικ-α	Δία	κύν-α
V.	γόνυ	γύναι	Ζεῦ	κύον

N. A. V.	γόναν-ε	γυναικ-ε		κύν-ε
G. D.	γονάτ-οιν	γυναικ-οῖν		κυν-οῖν
N. V.	γόναν-α	γυναικ-ες		κύν-ες
G.	γονάτ-ων	γυναικ-ῶν		κυν-ῶν
D.	γόνασι	γυναιξι		κυσί
A.	γόνατ-α	γυναικ-ας		κύν-ας

## 233.

	τὸ οὖς (ωτ-) <i>ear</i>	ὁ ἡ παῖς (παιδ-) <i>boy, girl</i>	ὁ Τρῶς (ΤρωF-) <i>Trojan</i>	ἡ χεὶρ (χειρ-) <i>hand</i>
N.	οὖς	παῖς	Τρῶς	χεὶρ
G.	ὠτ-ός	παιδ-ός	Τρω-ός	χειρ-ός
D.	ὠτ-ί	παιδ-ί	Τρω-ί	χειρ-ί
A.	οὖς	παιδ-α	Τρῶ-α	χεὶρ-α
V.	οὖς	παῖ	Τρῶς	χεὶρ
N. A. V.	ὠτ-ε	παιδ-ε	Τρῶ-ε	χεὶρ-ε
G. D.	ὠτ-οιν	παιδ-οιν	Τρῶ-οιν	χειρ-οῖν
N. V.	ὠτ-α	παιδ-ες	Τρῶ-ες	χεὶρ-ες
G.	ὠτ-ων	παιδ-ων	Τρῶ-ων	χειρ-ῶν
D.	ὠσί	παισί	Τρω-σί	χειρ-σί
A.	ὠτ-α	παιδ-ας	Τρῶ-ας	χεὶρ-ας

234. RULE 1.—The genitive may take the place of a predicate-noun. [732]

235. RULE 2.—There are two adverbs of swearing in Greek: *νή* *yes by* —, and *οὐ μά* *no by* —. Both are followed by the accusative. [723]

## 236. VOCABULARY.

Ἅιδης

*Hades*, (1) god of lower world,  
(2) lower world

Ἄρης (216, 1)

*Ares*, god of war

ἄρχω (governs gen.)	(1) <i>begin</i> , (2) <i>rule</i>
γόνυ (γονατ-) τό	<i>knee</i> (Lat. <i>genu</i> )
γυνή (γυναικ-) ἡ	<i>woman, wife (queen)</i>
δόρυ (δορατ-) τό	<i>spear (tree)</i>
δράκων (δρακοντ-) ὁ	<i>dragon</i> , great snake, represented in Homer as blood-red on back
Ἡρακλῆς (194)	<i>Heracles</i> , demigod, son of Zeus and Alcmena, hero of twelve labors, called in Greek ἀθλα
Κέρβερος	<i>Cerberus</i> , three-headed dog, warder of lower world
κεφαλή	<i>head</i> (a- <i>cephalous</i> , <i>cephalo-pod</i> )
Κύκλωψ (κυκλωπ-)	<i>Cyclops</i> , one-eyed giant, son of Poseidōn, the god of the sea
κυών (κυν-) ὁ and ἡ	<i>dog (hound)</i>
νεκρός 3, and subst.	<i>dead</i> ( <i>necro-logy</i> )
οὖς (ωτ-) τό	<i>ear</i>
Οὔτις (οὐ and τίς)	<i>No-one, Nobody</i> , assumed name of Odysseus, scheming to escape Cyclops
προσ-ελαύνω	<i>march toward</i>
τέρας (τερατ-) τό	<i>prodigy, monster</i>
τύχη	<i>fortune</i>
Φοινίκη	<i>Phoenicia</i>
Φύλαξ	<i>Watch</i>
χείρ (χειρ-) ἡ	<i>hand, arm</i> ( <i>chiro-graphy</i> )

## 237. EXERCISE.

1. ἐκεῖναι αἱ κῶμαι Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν. 2. τὸ ὄνομα  
 { τούτου τοῦ κυνὸς } Φύλαξ ἐστίν. 3. ὁ ἥρως Ἡρακλῆς  
 { τούτῳ τῷ κυνὶ }  
 ἐξ-έφερε Κέρβερον ἐξ Ἄιδου· ὁ δὲ Κέρβερος ἦν τέρας δ  
 εἶχε τρεῖς μὲν κυνῶν κεφαλὰς, τὴν δὲ οὐραν δράκοντος.  
 4. ἐν ταῖς Ἄιδου πύλαις ἵστατο ὁ Κέρβερος, ὁ τῶν  
 νεκρῶν φύλαξ. 5. ὦ Κῦρε, οἶει τὸν ἀδελφόν σου ἐθέλειν



μάχεσθαι; νῆ Δία, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰ Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσά-  
τιδός ἐστι παῖς, οὐ δύναμαι τὴν τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχὴν  
λαμβάνειν ἄνευ μάχης. 6. Ἀπόλλων καὶ Ἄρης παῖδες  
Διός εἰσιν. 7. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς φαίνεται ὁ τῆς  
βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφός, ἄγων (*ducens*) ἐκ Φοινίκης  
στρατιὰν ἀναρίθμητον. 8. οὗτος προσ-ῆλυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς  
Ἕλληνας, οἱ δὲ ἔμενον, τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἔχοντες (*habentes*)  
ἐν ταῖς δεξιαῖς (χερσὶ), τὰς δὲ ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ τοῖς γόνασι.  
9. Οὗτις ἐμοὶ ὄνομά ἐστιν, λέγει πρὸς Κύκλωπα ὁ ἐν  
Ὀδυσσεῖᾳ Ὀδυσσεύς.

10. γυναῖξιν ἀρχαὶν οὐ δίδωσιν ἡ τύχη.

## LESSON XLII.

### *Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension.*

Grammar: §§ 228 and a, 229 and a, 230.

**238.** For adjectives of the Vowel-declension, see Lesson XI. This lesson treats of adjective-stems in -υ- and -εσ-. The first class are of three terminations, and follow very closely, in the masculine and neuter, the substantives πῆχυς and ἄστυ in Lesson XXXIX. The second class have only two terminations, and follow closely Σωκράτης and γένος in Lesson XXXVIII.

### 239.

ἡδύς <i>sweet</i> (ἡδυ-)			
S. N.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδεῖᾱς	ἡδέος
D.	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ	ἡδεῖᾱ	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ
A.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
V.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ

Dual G. D.	ἡδέε ἡδέοιν	ἡδείᾱ ἡδείαιν	ἡδέε ἡδέοιν
P. N.	(ἡδέες) ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδαιῶν	ἡδέων
D.	ἡδέσι .	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι
A.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέα

## 240.

	εὐγενής <i>well-born</i> (ευγενεσ-)		πλήρης <i>full</i> (πληρεσ-)	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
S. N.	εὐγενής	εὐγενές	πλήρης	πλήρες
G.		εὐγενοῦς		πλήρους
D.		εὐγενεῖ		πλήρει
A.	εὐγενή	εὐγενές	πλήρη	πλήρες
V.		εὐγενές		πλήρες
Dual G. D.	εὐγενή εὐγενοῖν		πλήρη πληροῖν	
P. N.	εὐγενεῖς	εὐγενή	πλήρεις	πλήρη
G.		εὐγενῶν		πληρῶν
D.		εὐγενέσι		πλήρεσι
A.	εὐγενεῖς	εὐγενή	πλήρεις	πλήρη

For uncontracted forms, see the paradigm as given in § 230 of the Grammar.

## 241. VOCABULARY.

ἀληθής 2	<i>true</i>
ἀλήθεια	<i>truth</i>
βραδύς 3	<i>slow</i>
βραχύς 3	<i>short, brief</i> (brachy-logy)
γλυκύς 3	<i>sweet</i>
εὐγενής 2	<i>well-born, noble</i>
εὐρύς 3	<i>broad</i>
ἡδύς 3	<i>sweet</i>

Ἰωάννης	<i>John</i>
Κρής (Κρητ-) ὁ	<i>Cretan</i>
μάλα adv.	<i>very</i>
μέλος (μελεσ-) τό	<i>(1) member, (2) song</i>
ὀξύς 3	<i>sharp (oxy-tone)</i>
πικρός 3	<i>bitter</i>
πλήρης 2	<i>full</i>
Σκύθης	<i>Scythian</i>
ταχύς 3	<i>swift (tachy-graphy)</i>
τοξότης	<i>bow-man, archer</i>
τόξον	<i>bow</i>
τριήρης 2	<i>lit., triply-fitted, i. e. with three rows (or banks) of oars</i>
τριήρης (τριηρεσ-) ἡ	<i>swift vessel with three banks of oars, ship of war, trireme</i>
Χάλος	<i>Chalus, river in Asia Minor</i>
χειμών (χειμων-) ὁ	<i>(1) storm, (2) season of storms, winter</i>
ψευδής 2	<i>false (pseud-onym)</i>
ψεῦδος (ψευδεσ-) τό	<i>falsehood</i>

## 242. EXERCISE.

1. ὁ μὲν βίος βραχύς, ἡ δὲ τέχνη μακρά. 2. οἱ τῶν πολεμίων τοξόται ἦσαν μάλα ταχεῖς καὶ ἐλαφροί. 3. ἐν τῷ μὲν στόματι Ἰωάννου, τοῦ ἀποστόλου, ἦν τὸ βιβλίον ἡδὺ ὥς (as) μέλι, ἐν δὲ τῷ γαστρὶ πικρόν. 4. τὴν ἀλήθειαν λέγωμεν μετ' ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων ὅτι (because) μέλη ἀλλήλων (268) ἐσμέν. 5. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξελαύνει Κῦρος σταθμοὺς τέσσαρας ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ἐνὸς πλέθρου τὸ εὖρος, πλήρη ἰχθύων οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον.

1. Broad is the road which leads to (ἐπὶ) death. 2. The trireme was full of hoplites and bowmen. 3. The days of winter are short, but the nights are long.

4. The general follows with thirty bowmen. 5. These bowmen were Cretans and Scythians.

ORAL EXERCISE.

1. οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀληθὲς φίλος μου ἐστίν. 2. δεῖ τοὺς υἱοὺς τῶν εὐγενῶν εὐγενεῖς εἶναι. 3. ὁρῶ τὴν ταχεῖαν τριήρη τοῦ ναυάρχου.

1. The transport is full of sailors and cargo. 2. The Euphrates river is broad. 3. The bows of the Scythians are long.

LESSON XLIII.

Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension, continued.

Grammar : §§ 233, 234, 235, 237 and a, 239, 240.

243.

	μέλας (μελαν-) black			εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-) fortunate	
S. N.	μέλας	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὐδαίμων	εὐδαιμον
G.	μέλανος	μελαίνης	μέλανος	εὐδαίμονος	
D.	μέλανι	μελαίνῃ	μέλανι	εὐδαίμονι	
A.	μέλανα	μέλαιναν	μέλαν	εὐδαίμονα	εὐδαιμον
V.	μέλαν	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὐδαιμον	
Dual	μέλανε μελάνοιν	μελαίνᾱ μελαίναιν	μέλανε μελάνοιν	εὐδαίμονε εὐδαιμόνοιν	
P. N.	μέλανεσ	μέλαιναι	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
G.	μελάνων	μελαινῶν	μελάνων	εὐδαιμόνων	
D.	μέλασι	μελαίναις	μέλασι	εὐδαίμοσι	
A.	μέλανάς	μελαίνᾱς	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

## 244.

χαρίεις (χαριεντ-) <i>pleasing</i>			πᾶς (παντ-) <i>all</i>		
χαρίεις	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
χαρίεντος	χαριέσσης	χαρίεντος	παντός	πάσης	παντός
χαρίεντι	χαριέσση	χαρίεντι	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
χαρίεντα	χαρίεσσαν	χαρίεν	πάντα	πάσαν	πᾶν
χαρίεν	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πᾶν	πᾶσα	πᾶν
χαρίεντε	χαριέσσᾱ	χαρίεντε	πάντε	πάσᾱ	πάντε
χαριέντοιιν	χαριέσσαιν	χαριέντοιιν	πάντοιιν	πάσαιιν	πάντοιιν
χαρίεντες	χαρίεσσαι	χαρίεντα	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
χαριέντων	χαρισσῶν	χαριέντων	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
χαρίεσι	χαριέσσαις	χαρίεσι	πᾶσι	πάσαις	πᾶσι
χαρίεντας	χαριέσσᾱς	χαρίεντα	πάντας	πάσᾱς	πάντα

**245. RULE.**—πᾶς, meaning *all*, usually has the predicate position. In the sing., joined to a substantive without the article, it means *every*.

## 246. VOCABULARY.

ἀνα-γιγνώσκω	<i>recognize, read</i> (Lat. co-gnoscere)
ἄρρην (αρρεν-) 2, also	<i>male</i> . From this word is derived
ἄρσην (αρσεν-) 2	the name of the poison <i>arsenic</i> , Gr. ἀρσενικόν, so called on account of its potency
εἰκών (εικον-) ἡ	<i>image, portrait - statue</i> ( <b>Eikon</b> Basilicé, <b>Icono</b> -clast)
ἔπος (επες-) τό	<i>word</i> ; pl. τὰ ἔπη <i>Epic poetry</i>
ἑταῖρος	<i>companion</i>
εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-) 2	<i>prosperous</i> , lit. <i>having a favoring deity</i> , compounded of εὖ and δαίμων <i>deity</i>
εὕρισκω	<i>find</i>
θῆλυς 3	<i>female</i>

Κίρκη	<i>Circé, goddess skilled in magic arts</i>
μέλας 3	<i>black (melan-choly)</i>
Ὅμηρος	<i>Homer</i>
πᾶς 3	<i>all (pan-creas, pan-oply)</i>
πτερόεις 3	<i>feathered, winged</i>
τίκτω	<i>bring forth, beget</i>
ὑλήεις (ὑλη) 3	<i>woody, cf. Lat. silvestris</i>
φωνήεις (φωνή) 3	<i>sounding, vocal, speaking</i>
χαρίεις (χάρις) 3	<i>graceful, pleasing</i>

### 247. EXERCISE.

1. καὶ λέγει Θεός, ποιῶμεν (let us make) ἄνθρωπον κατὰ (according to) τὴν ἡμετέρᾱν εἰκόνα, ἄρρεν καὶ θῆλυ. 2. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ὁ Κῦρος εἰς ἄλλην πόλιν, οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, Ἰσσοὺς τὸ ὄνομα. 3. Παρύσατις, ἡ Δαρείου γυνή, τίκτει δύο παῖδας. 4. οἱ Ὀδυσσέως ἐταῖροι εὕρισκousι τὴν οἰκίαν Κίρκης, θεᾶς φωνηέσης, ἐν νήσῳ ὑληέσση. 5. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Κῦρος δίδωσι πᾶσι τοῖς Ἑλλησι μισθὸν πλήρη τριῶν μηνῶν.

1. The name of this place is Black Water. 2. Not all sacrifices (τὰ ἱερά) are pleasing to the gods. 3. The city into which the army advances (§ 129) is prosperous. 4. Gifts of friends are pleasant to all. 5. We read the winged words of Homer.

## LESSON XLIV.

*Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension, concluded:  
Participle Stems in -ντ-, and the Irregular Adjectives μέγας and πολὺς.*

Grammar: §§ 241, 242, 247.

248. ALL present active participles of verbs in -ω are declined like λύων.

	<i>loosing</i> (λύοντ-)		
S. N.	λύων	λύουσα	λύον
G.	λύοντος	λυούσης	λύοντος
D.	λύοντι	λυούση	λύοντι
A.	λύοντα	λύουσιν	λύον
V.	λύων	λύουσα	λύον
Dual	λύοντε λυόντων	λυούσᾱ λυούσαιν	λύοντε λυόντων
P. N.	λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα
G.	λυόντων	λυουσῶν	λυόντων
D.	λύουσι	λυούσαις	λύουσι
A.	λύοντας	λυούσᾱς	λύοντα

REMARK.—All middle participles are declined like ἀγαθός.

249. The present active participles of the model -μι verbs, δεικνύς, ιστάς, τιθείς, διδούς, are thus declined :

<i>showing</i> (δεικνυντ-)			<i>setting</i> (ισταντ-)		
δεικνύς	δεικνύσα	δεικνύν	ιστάς	ιστάσα	ιστάν
δεικνύντος	δεικνύσης	δεικνύντος	ιστάντος	ιστάσης	ιστάντος
δεικνύτι	δεικνύση	δεικνύντι	ιστάντι	ιστάση	ιστάντι
δεικνύντα	δεικνύσαν	δεικνύν	ιστάντα	ιστάσαν	ιστάν
δεικνύς	δεικνύσα	δεικνύν	ιστάς	ιστάσα	ιστάν
δεικνύντε	δεικνύσᾱ	δεικνύντε	ιστάντε	ιστάσᾱ	ιστάντε
δεικνύντων	δεικνύσαιν	δεικνύντων	ιστάντων	ιστάσαιν	ιστάντων
δεικνύντες	δεικνύσαι	δεικνύντα	ιστάντες	ιστάσαι	ιστάντα
δεικνύντων	δεικνύσῶν	δεικνύντων	ιστάντων	ιστασῶν	ιστάντων
δεικνύσι	δεικνύσαις	δεικνύσι	ιστάσι	ιστάσαις	ιστάσι
δεικνύντας	δεικνύσᾱς	δεικνύντα	ιστάντας	ιστάσᾱς	ιστάντα

<i>placing</i> (τιθεντ-)			<i>giving</i> (διδοντ-)		
τιθείς	τιθείσα	τιθέν	διδούς	διδούσα	διδόν
τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος	διδόντος	διδούσης	διδόντος
τιθέντι	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντι	διδόντι	διδούσῃ	διδόντι
τιθέντα	τιθείσαν	τιθέν	διδόντα	διδούσαν	διδόν
τιθείς	τιθείσα	τιθέν	διδούς	διδούσα	διδόν
τιθέντε	τιθείσᾱ	τιθέντε	διδόντε	διδούσᾱ	διδόντε
τιθέντοιν	τιθείσαιν	τιθέντοιν	διδόντοιν	διδούσαιν	διδόντοιν
τιθέντες	τιθείσαι	τιθέντα	διδόντες	διδούσαι	διδόντα
τιθέντων	τιθεισῶν	τιθέντων	διδόντων	διδουσῶν	διδόντων
τιθείσι	τιθείσαις	τιθείσι	διδούσι	διδούσαις	διδούσι
τιθέντας	τιθείσᾱς	τιθέντα	διδόντας	διδούσᾱς	διδόντα

## 250.

<i>great</i> (μεγα- AND μεγαλο-)			<i>much</i> (πολυ- AND πολλο-)		
μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
μέγα	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύ	πολλή	πολύ
μεγάλω	μεγάλᾱ	μεγάλω			
μεγάλοιν	μεγάλαιν	μεγάλοιν			
μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
μεγάλους	μεγάλᾱς	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

251. Participles are of more frequent use in Greek than in English or Latin. It has been already stated (§ 155) that the participle with the article may



be the equivalent of a substantive or of a relative clause. Thus, *ὁ φέρων* *the bearer*, or *he who bears*.

A still more common use of the participle is to take the place of dependent (adverbial) clauses of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, or *concession*. Thus *ἄγων στρατιὰν μεγάλην*, lit. *leading a large army*, may also be translated :

*while he was leading a large army* (time);  
*since he was leading a large army* (cause);  
*if he was leading a large army* (condition);  
*although he was leading a large army* (concession).

## 252. VOCABULARY.

ἄγων	leading
ἄκρον	height
βουλόμενος	wishing
δεικνύς	showing
διαβαίνων	crossing
διδούς	giving
δυνάμενος	being able
ἐξ-ελαύνων	marching
ἔχων	having, often translated <i>with</i>
ιστάς	setting
ιστάμενος	standing
λύων	loosing
μέγας 3	great
πέμπων	sending
πολύς 3	much, pl. many
τιθείς	putting
φεύγων	fleeing
φυλάττων	guarding
φυλαττόμενος	being on one's guard
ὢν	being
στρατός or στράτευμα	army
τάξις ἡ	(1) order, arrangement, (2) troop

## 253. EXERCISE.

1. οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται, οὐ δυνάμενοι εὕρισκιν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτᾱς οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς, ἀπ-ώλλυντο. 2. δις δίδωσιν ὁ ταχέως (quickly) διδούς (*bis dat qui cito dat*). 3. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνων, πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει ἔχων, προσ-έρχεται τοῖς πολεμίοις. 4. ἐνταῦθα ἔρχεται βασιλεὺς ἄγων μέγαν στρατόν, οὐ δὲ βουλόμενος μάχεσθαι, ἴστησι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς καὶ μένει ἵνα μανθάνῃ τί μέλλουσι ποιεῖν (to do) οἱ Ἕλληνες. 5. ἔτι παῖς ὢν ἐφαίνετο Κῦρος ἄξιος ἄρχειν.

1. I see the Persians guarding the heights. 2. I see an old man crossing the river. 3. Fleeing, they strike (*παίω*) their enemies. 4. I admire those who learn. 5. I send-after all who wish to come.

## LESSON XLV.

*Comparison of Adjectives, and the Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.*

Grammar: §§ 248, 249 and a, 251 and a, 253 and a.

254. ALL superlatives are declined like *ἀγαθός*. Comparatives in *-τερος* are declined like *φίλιος*. The less frequent comparatives in *-λων* (*-ων*) are declined like *μείζων* (236).

		μείζων (μειζον-) greater	
S.	N.	M. F. μείζων	N. μείζον
	G.		μείζονος
	D.		μείζονι
	A.	μείζονα, μείζω	μείζον
	V.		μείζον

Dual	μεῖζονε μεῖζόνοιν	
P. N.	μεῖζονες, μεῖζους	μεῖζονα, μεῖζω
G.		μεῖζόνων
D.		μεῖζοσι
A.	μεῖζονας, μεῖζους	μεῖζονα, μεῖζω

**255. RULE.**—Adjectives of the comparative degree may be followed by ἢ *than*, or by the genitive. [643]

### 256. VOCABULARY.

ἀξίος (αξιο-) 3	
γλυκύς (γλυκυ-) 3	
κούφος (κουφο-) 3	<i>light</i>
μάκαρ (μακαρ-) 1	<i>blessed (Macaria)</i>
μέλας (μελαν-) 3	
μέλαν (subst.) τό	<i>ink</i>
νέος (νεο-) 3	<i>new, young</i>
πένης (πενητ-) 2	<i>poor</i>
πικρός (πικρο-) 3	
πλούσιος (πλουσιο-) 3	<i>rich</i>
πονηρός (πονηρο-) 3	<i>wicked</i>
σαφής (σαφες-) 2	<i>clear</i>
χαρίεις (χαριεντ-)	
<hr/>	
εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-) 2	
σώφρων (σωφρον-) 2	<i>discreet</i>
πίων (πιον-) 2	<i>fat</i>
αἰσχρός (root αισχ-) 3	<i>disgraceful</i>
ἐχθρός (root εχθ-) 3	<i>hostile, of personal feeling.</i>
	Alienated φίλοι are ἐχθροί
ἡδύς (root ἡδ-) 3	

μέγας (root μεγ-) 3	
ταχύς (root ταχ-) 3	
Ἀβροκόμας	<i>Abrocomas, Persian satrap</i>
αἶξ (αιγ-) ὁ and ἡ	<i>goat</i>
βαρύς 3	<i>heavy, deep (bary-tone)</i>
ἡμίους	<i>half</i>
θύω	<i>sacrifice</i>
παιδείᾱ	<i>training, education</i>
Πηλεὺς	<i>Peleus, father of Achilles</i>
πίσσα	<i>pitch</i>
πόνος	<i>toil</i>
πλησίον adv.	<i>near</i>
ρίζα	<i>root (rhizo-pod)</i>
ταῦρος	<i>bull (Lat. taurus)</i>
φιλαργυρίᾱ (φίλος, ἄργυρος)	<i>love of money, covetousness</i>

All the above adjectives should be compared and declined. If the meaning has been given before, it is not here repeated.

## 257. EXERCISE.

1. οὗτοι οἱ λόγοι χαριέστατοι. 2. ἡδιστον τὸ μέλι.  
 3. ἡ φιλαργυρίᾱ ρίζα τοῦ κακοῦ ἐστίν. 4. Ἀβροκόμας,  
 Κύρου ἐχθρός, ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, ὁ δὲ Κύρος  
 ἐβούλετο ἵεναι ἐπ' αὐτόν. 5. τὸ ὄνομα τῶν Τριάκοντα  
 ἔχθιστον ἦν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις. 6. ἡ ἀρχὴ παντὸς ἔργου  
 μέγιστόν ἐστιν. 7. οὐκ ἔστιν μείζον ὄπλον τοῖς ἀνθρώ-  
 ποις ἢ ἡ σοφία. 8. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλεγον τὸν τῶν Περσῶν  
 βασιλέα, μέγαν βασιλέα. 9. τὸ ἡμισυ μέρος τῶν ἀνθρώ-  
 πων ἐστὶ τὸ θῆλυ γένος. 10. ὀξεῖαν φωνὴν ἔχουσιν αἱ  
 γυναῖκες καὶ οἱ παῖδες, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες βαρεῖαν.

11. κάλλιστόν ἐστι κτήμα παιδείᾱ βροτοῖς (βροτός mortal).

1. The cloud is blacker than pitch. 2. The sleep  
 of the laborer is sweeter because of his toil. 3. Sweet  
 water flows from this spring. 4. Socrates was the

most discreet of men. 5. Art thou greater than our father Abraham (Ἀβραάμ indeclinable)? 6. I am richer than you. 7. The old are wiser than the young. 8. Extending-along (παρά w. acc.) the Euphrates river was a city large and most prosperous, Thapsacus (Θάψακος) by name. 9. Achilles was the son of Peleus, the most discreet of mankind. 10. The Greeks sacrifice to the gods the fattest flesh (τὰ πριότατα κρέα) of bulls and of goats.

---

## LESSON XLVI.

*Adjectives of Irregular Comparison.—Adjectives of Defective Comparison.—Comparison by Adverbs.—Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.*

Grammar: §§ 254 (1–7), 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260 two lines.

**258.** It must be understood that what is meant by the irregular comparison of the adjectives in 254 is that essentially different stems, on account of general similarity of meaning, are brought together under the same head.

**259.** The statements of § 257 and § 259 apply to adverbs derived from adjectives of both the vowel- and consonant-declension.

The positive of adverbs from adjectives of the vowel-declension, and from adjective-stems in -ν- and -εσ- of the consonant-declension, will regularly end in -ως. The positive of adverbs from adjective-stems in -ν- of the consonant-declension will end in -εως.

The comparative and superlative of adverbs will end in -τερον, -τατα, or in -ιον, -ιστα, according as the

comparative and superlative of the adjectives from which they are formed end in *-τερος*, *-τατος*, or in *-ιον*, *-ιστος*.

**260. RULE 1.**—The dative is often used, especially with a comparative, to show the degree by which one thing differs from another: [781]

*πολλῷ ἄμεινον much better* (lit. *better by much*).

**261. RULE 2.**—An adverb standing in the attributive position, or after the article when the noun is omitted, may have the force of an adjective or even of a substantive (cf. §§ 600, 666 a):

*ἡ ἄνω ὁδός the upward road.*

*τὸ ἔσω τείχος the inner wall*, lit. *the within wall*.

*οἱ τότε the men of that time*, lit. *the then men*.

## 262. VOCABULARY.

<i>ἀγαθός</i> 3	( <i>Agatha</i> )
<i>βαθύς</i>	<i>deep</i>
<i>κακός</i> 3	
<i>καλός</i> 3	
<i>μικρός</i> 3	( <i>micro-cosm</i> )
<i>ὀλίγος</i> 3	( <i>olig-archy</i> )
<i>πολύς</i> 3	( <i>poly-gon</i> , <i>γωνία</i> <i>angle</i> )
<i>πρότερος</i> 3	<i>former</i>
<i>πρόθυμος</i> 2	<i>zealous</i>
<i>ῥάδιος</i> 3	<i>easy</i>
<i>ὑστερος</i> 3	<i>later</i>
<i>χαλεπός</i> 3	<i>hard</i>

---

<i>ἀκριβῶς</i> ( <i>ἀκριβής</i> 2, <i>exact</i> )	<i>exactly</i>
<i>ἀληθῶς</i> ( <i>ἀληθής</i> 2, <i>true</i> )	<i>truly</i>
<i>ἀληθέστερον</i>	<i>more truly</i>
<i>ἀληθέστατα</i>	<i>most truly</i>
<i>ἡδέως</i> ( <i>ἡδύς</i> 3, <i>sweet</i> )	<i>gladly</i>
<i>ἡδιον</i>	<i>more gladly</i>

ἥδιστα	<i>most gladly</i>
πάντως	<i>wholly, by all means</i>
σαφῶς (σαφής 2)	<i>clearly</i>
σαφέστερον	<i>more clearly</i>
σαφέστατα	<i>most clearly</i>
σοφῶς (σοφός 3)	<i>wisely</i>
σοφώτερον	<i>more wisely</i>
σοφώτατα	<i>most wisely</i>
ταχέως	<i>quickly</i>
θᾶπτον	<i>more quickly</i>
τάχιστα	<i>most quickly</i>
ὥς τάχιστα	<i>as quickly as possible</i>

---

ἅμα	<i>at the same time</i>
ἄνω	<i>up</i>
ἔσω	<i>within</i>
ἔξω	<i>without</i>
κάτω	<i>down</i>
λίαν	<i>exceedingly</i>
μάλα, μᾶλλον, μάλιστα	<i>much, very ; more ; most</i>

---

ἀριθμός	<i>number (arithmetic)</i>
Ἀρκαδίᾱ	<i>Arcadia, a district of Peloponnesus</i>
κύβος	<i>solid square, cube, pl. dice</i>
Λυκούργος	<i>Lycurgus</i>
πεδῖον	<i>plain</i>
Περσικός 3	<i>Persian</i>
πίπτω	<i>fall</i>
πλοῦτος	<i>wealth</i>
Σπαρτιάτης	<i>Spartan</i>
στρατόπεδον	<i>camp</i>

NOTE.—The scholar should form the comparative and superlative of all the adjectives and adverbs contained in the foregoing vocabulary.

## 263. EXERCISE.

1. τὸν τῶν παίδων θάνατον οἱ γονεῖς οὐ ῥαδίως φέρουσιν. 2. δεῖ τὸν μαθητὴν σαφῶς καὶ ἀκριβῶς τὸ μάθημα λέγειν. 3. οἱ ἐνταῦθα ἵπποι μέλונες ἦσαν τῶν Περσικῶν. 4. οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἦσαν πενέστατοι. 5. Κῦρος ταῦτα ἔλεγεν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, τὴν ἀρετὴν αὐτοῦ ἀκούοντες, προθυμότερον καὶ ἥδιον εἶποντο. 6. ὁ ποταμὸς λίαν βαθὺς καὶ πλήρης μεγάλων ἰχθύων ἦν. 7. ἐν τούτῳ (τῷ χρόνῳ) σημαίνει (gives a signal) ὁ σαλπιγκτὴς τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἔτι θάπτον ἢ πρότερον ἔφευγον, τρέχοντες διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 8. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ὀλίγῳ ὕστερον τῶν Περσῶν, διαβαίνουνσι τὸν ποταμόν. 9. τὸ μὲν ἔξω τείχος εἶχον οἱ Κίλικες, τὸ δὲ ἔσω (τείχος) οἱ Ἕλληνες.

10. καλῶς αἰεὶ πίπτουσιν οἱ Διὸς κύβοι.

1. Death is easier than flight for a brave soldier. 2. The most of the Greek cities were free. 3. The laws of Lycurgus were the fairest possession of the Spartans. 4. Better is a good name than great riches. 5. The weapons of the barbarians were inferior to (worse than) the weapons of the Greeks. 6. Arcadia has very beautiful plains and very high mountains. 7. The general leads the soldiers very quickly out of the camp. 8. The horse runs much faster than the dog. 9. I see the enemy running as fast as possible across the plain. 10. Not number (ἀριθμός) and strength, but a brave soul gives victories in war.



## LESSON XLVII.

*Contract-Verbs.—Present System of τιμάω in all Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 37 c and d, 39 a (General principles of contraction); 105 and a (Accent of contracted syllables); 323, 409 and a, 410 a, 412 (Paradigms and special rules for verbs in -αω).

**264.** AFTER the nouns and adjectives of the vowel-declension had been learned, it was necessary to devote a special lesson (Lesson XIII) to contracted nouns and adjectives of this declension. Occasion for such contraction arose when an *a*, *ε*, or *ο* was brought before a following vowel. Similarly, contraction occurs in -ω verbs when the variable vowel % of the present-stem has before it either an *a*, or an *ε*, or an *ο*, i. e. in verbs ending in -αω, -εω, or -οω. This contraction is confined to the present system, and implies no irregularity whatever in the verbs.

At this point it is important to notice the distinction between the *theme* and the *present-stem*. In all contract-verbs we discover the theme by dropping from the present-stem the variable vowel %. Thus, the theme of τιμάω is τιμα-, nearly identical with τιμᾱ-, the stem of the noun τιμή *honor*.

Contract-verbs, it may be further remarked, are in general derived from noun-stems, whence they are called denominatives (*de* and *nomen*, *from a noun*).

This and the two following lessons will be devoted to the present system of contract-verbs, or verbs with themes ending in *a*, *ε*, *ο*.

The general principle of contraction applying to verbs in -αω is, that *a* absorbs an *e*-sound (*ε* or *η*), but

is itself *absorbed* by an *o*-sound (*o* or *ω*). Hence the following table:

$$\begin{array}{ll} a + \epsilon = \bar{a} & a + o = \omega \\ a + \eta = \bar{a} & a + \omega = \omega \end{array}$$

An *ι*, connected with the *ε* or the *ο* sound, appears in the contracted syllable as *ι* subscript:

$$\begin{array}{l} \dot{a} + \epsilon\iota = \alpha \\ a + \eta = \alpha \\ a + \omicron\iota = \varphi \end{array}$$

**265. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF τιμάω, THEME τιμα-, PRESENT-STEM τιμα<sup>ο</sup>|<sub>ε</sub>.**

	Active.		Midd. and Pass.
Prs.	τιμῶ		τιμάμαι
Ipf.	ἐτίμων		ἐτιμώμην (39 c)
Sub.	τιμῶ		τιμάμαι
Opt.	τιμήην		τιμήμην
Inv.	τίμᾱ		τιμῶ
Inf.	τιμάην		τιμάσθαι
Ptc.	τιμών		τιώμενος

**266. RULE 1.**—The genitive of value is used with verbs of *buying, selling, valuing*. [746]

**RULE 2.**—χράομαι (χρῶμαι) *I use*, takes its object in the dative (cf. Lat. *utor*):

**RULE 3.**—Four common verbs in *-αω* have *η* in all contracted forms where the principles stated above (§ 264 *ad fin.*) would require *ā*. These verbs are ζάω *I live*, διψάω *I thirst*, πεινάω *I hunger*, κράομαι *I use*. Hence the infinitives: ζῆν, διψῆν, πεινῆν, χρῆσθαι.

**267. VOCABULARY.**

αἰσχροῦς	<i>disgracefully</i>
ἀνδρείᾱ (ἀνῆρ)	<i>courage</i> , cf. Lat. <i>virtus</i> ( <i>vir</i> )
διψάω	<i>thirst</i>
ἐνδόξως (ἐν, δόξα)	<i>gloriously</i>

ἔρωτάω	ask
ἡττάομαι (ἡττων)	be beaten (pass. of νικάω)
ζάω	live
Θερμοπύλαι	Thermopylae (lit. Hot-gates)
κρέας (§ 209) τό	flesh
κτάομαι	acquire
Λεωνίδας	Leonidas, King of Sparta and hero of Thermopylae
μνᾶ (144)	mina, sum of money (not a coin) = 100 drachmas
νικάω	be victorious
διστός	arrow
πεινάω	hunger
Ποσειδῶν (Ποσειδων-, 185)	Poseidōn, God of the Sea
σιγή	silence
σιωπάω	be silent
τελευτάω	bring to end; often, with βίον supplied, die
τιμάω	honor
τριᾱκόσιοι 3	three hundred
χράομαι	use

## 268. EXERCISE.

1. οὗτος ὁ ἵππος τιμάται πέντε μνῶν. 2. οἱ Ἕλλη-  
νες ἔζων οὐ μόνον ἀπὸ κρεῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπ' ἰχθύων. 3.  
αἱ τῶν Σπαρτιατῶν μητέρες ἐκέλευον τοὺς παῖδας ἢ νικᾶν  
ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ἢ τελευτᾶν. 4. πάντα τὰ ἀγαθὰ κτώ-  
μεθα πόνῳ. 5. τὰ πάντα ἐστὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ νικῶντων.  
6. οἱ Ἕλληνες, προ-ιόντες ὀλίγον ἐκ τοῦ τόπου ἐν ᾧ ἡ  
μάχη ἐγένετο, ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις (as wood) τοῖς διστοῖς  
οὓς οἱ φεύγοντες βάρβαροι ἀπ-έβαλλον. 7. ὁ παῖς  
λέγει πεινὴν καὶ διψήν. 8. φημὶ τὸν παῖδα πεινὴν καὶ  
διψήν. 9. τὰ καλὰ χαλεπά, λέγει Σόλων, εἰς τῶν  
ἐπτά σοφῶν.

10. ὦ παῖ, σιώπᾱ, πόλλ' ἔχει σιγὴ καλά.

1. Our brave fathers acquired the liberty which we possess. 2. The Athenians were honoring especially (μάλιστα) Poseidōn and Athenā. 3. Courage was honored by the Spartans more than wisdom. 4. To die gloriously is better than to live disgracefully. 5. Leonidas and the three hundred Spartans ended (their lives) in the battle of Thermopylae, and acquired immortal glory.

## LESSON XLVIII.

*Contract - Verbs continued: Present System of φιλέω in all Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 37 c and e, 39 b (General principles of contraction); 324, 411, four lines (Paradigms and special rules).

**269.** VERBS in -εω are mostly denominatives from noun-stems of the *ο*-declension. Their themes show a slight variation in the final vowel (from *ο* to *ε*) from the noun-stem.

Thus, φιλο-, stem of φίλος, yields the verb-theme φιλε-, pres. φιλέω.

So, πολεμο-, stem of πόλεμος, yields the verb-theme πολεμε-, pres. πολεμέω.

Again, οικο-, stem of οἶκος, yields the verb-theme οικε-, pres. οἰκέω.

The following is the table of contractions applying to verbs in -εω:

$\epsilon + \omega = \omega$	$\epsilon + \eta = \eta$	$\epsilon + \omicron\iota = \omicron\iota$
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \epsilon + \epsilon \\ \epsilon + \epsilon\iota \end{array} \right\} = \epsilon\iota$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \epsilon + \omicron \\ \epsilon + \omicron\upsilon \end{array} \right\} = \omicron\upsilon$	

**270. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF φιλέω, THEME  
φιλε-, PRESENT-STEM φιλε<sup>ο</sup>|ε.**

	Active.	Midd. and Pass.
Prs.	φιλέω	φιλοῦμαι
Ipf.	ἐφίλων	ἐφιλούμην
Sub.	φιλέω	φιλώμαι
Opt.	φιλοίην	φιλοίμην
Imv.	φίλα	φιλοῦ
Inf.	φιλεῖν	φιλείσθαι
Ptc.	φιλῶν, -οῦσα, -όν	φιλούμενος, -μένη, -μενον

**271. RULE 1.**—The adjectives μέσος, [671]  
ἄκρος, ἔσχατος, used in the predicate position,  
refer to a *part* of the subject:

μέση ἡ χώρα *the middle of the country*  
(but ἡ μέση χώρα *the middle country*);  
ἄκρᾳ ἡ χεὶρ *the point of the hand*;  
ἔσχατον τὸ ὄρος *the end of the mountain*  
(but τὸ ἔσχατον ὄρος *the last mountain, of a series*).

**272. RULE 2.**—Verbs in -εω of two syllables admit only the contraction into ει. Wherever contraction would result in any other sound, the uncontracted form is used.

Thus: πλέω, πλείς, πλεί, πλείτον, πλείτον, πλέομεν, πλείτε, πλέουσι. So, ἐπλεον, ἐπλεις, ἐπλει, ἐπλείτον, ἐπλείτην, ἐπλέομεν, ἐπλείτε, ἐπλεον.

**273. VOCABULARY.**

ἀδικέω (ἄδικος 2, <i>unjust</i> )	<i>do wrong to</i>
ἄκρος 3	<i>at the top or end</i>
ἀνάγκη	<i>necessity</i>
ἀνάγκη μοί ἐστιν	<i>mihī necesse est</i>
δέω	<i>need, chiefly used in 3d pers.</i>
δεῖ	<i>it is necessary (§ 146)</i>

δοκέω	<i>seem, chiefly used in 3d pers.</i>
δοκεῖ	<i>it seems, it seems best (§ 146)</i>
δοκεῖ μοι	<i>it seems to me, it seems best to me</i>
ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς	<i>they thought, they decided</i>
ἔσχατος 3	<i>extreme</i>
ζητέω	<i>seek, ask after</i>
Ἰθάκη	<i>Ithaca, island in Ionian Sea</i>
καλέω	<i>call</i>
μέσος 3	<i>middle (Meso-potamia)</i>
οἰκέω (οἶκος)	<i>inhabit, dwell in</i>
πατρίς (πατριδ-) ἡ	<i>native country</i>
Πηνελόπη	<i>Pēnelopē, the faithful wife of Ulysses</i>
πλέω	<i>sail</i>
ποιέω	<i>make, do</i>
εὖ ποιεῖν	<i>treat well</i>
κακῶς ποιεῖν = ἀδικεῖν	<i>treat ill</i>
οὔτε—οὔτε	<i>neither—nor</i>
πολεμέω, w. obj. in dat.	<i>war with</i>
στράτευμα, -ματος, τό	<i>army</i>

## 274. EXERCISE.

- οἱ ἐμὲ τιμῶσι, ἐκείνους ἐγὼ τιμῶ, λέγει Θεός.
- μὴ ἀπο-βάλλωμεν ἂ οἱ γονεῖς (ἡμῶν) ἐκτῶντο. 3.
- δεῖ ἡμᾶς διὰ μέσης τῆς χώρᾱς ταύτης ἐλαύνειν. 4.
- ἀνάγκη τοῖς στρατιώταις δια-βαίνειν τὸν ποταμόν. 5.
- ἐ-δόκει τῷ στρατεύματι ἀγγέλους παρὰ Κῦρον πέμπειν.
- ὅστις ἄλλους φιλεῖ, αὐτὸς αἰεὶ φιλεῖται. 7. τί (How)
- ὑμᾶς ἀδικῶ ; οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἀδικεῖς. 8. οἰκῶμεν τὴν καλὴν
- χώρᾱν ἣν ὀρώμεν. 9. αὕτη ἡ καλὴ νῆσος ὑπὸ Κυκλώ-
- πων ὤκειτο. 10. ἐν μέσῃ τῇ θαλάσῃ ἔκειτο ἡ Καλυ-
- ψοῦς νῆσος, ἐν ἣ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἔμενε πολλοὺς μῆνας, οὐ

δυνάμενος ὄραν, οὔτε τὴν πατρίδα Ἰθάκην οὔτε τὴν γυναῖκα Πηνελόπην.

11. ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν ἀποθνήσκει νέος (dies young).

1. You must hear what I say. 2. It seems good to me to speak. I decide to speak. 3. Cyrus treats well all-who-inhabit (πάντας τοὺς οἰκοῦντας) his country. 4. This man does not say what he seeks-for. 5. Why do you call me? 6. Why do you ask, says Xenophon, do you not see the enemy coming-up (προσ-ιόντας) quickly? 7. Let us wage war with the enemies of our country. 8. The Cyclopes inhabit a beautiful island. 9. We wish not to seem but to be. 10. In the midst of the city is a large and beautiful tree.

## LESSON XLIX.

*Contract-Verbs concluded: Present System of δηλώω in all Voices.—Declension of Present Participle of Contract-Verbs.*

Grammar: §§ 39 b and c, 37 c and e (General principles of contraction); 325 (Paradigms); 243 (Declension of Present Active Participles of Contract-Verbs).

**275.** DENOMINATIVES in -*ow* are a less numerous class than those in -*aw* and -*ew*. They are formed from stems of the *o* declension.

The following is a table of contractions:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \left. \begin{array}{l} o + \omega \\ o + \eta \end{array} \right\} = \omega & \left. \begin{array}{l} o + \epsilon\iota \\ o + \eta \\ o + \omicron\iota \end{array} \right\} = \omicron\iota & \left. \begin{array}{l} o + \epsilon \\ o + \omicron \\ o + \omicron\upsilon \end{array} \right\} = \omicron\upsilon \end{array}$$

276. SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF δηλώ, THEME  
δηλο-, PRESENT-STEM δηλο°|ε-.

	Active.	Midd. and Pass.
Prs.	δηλῶ	δηλοῦμαι
Ipf.	ἔδηλουν	ἔδηλούμην
Sub.	δηλῶ	δηλῶμαι
Opt.	δηλοίην	δηλοίμην
Imv.	δήλου	δηλοῦ
Inf.	δηλοῦν	δηλοῦσθαι
Ptc.	δηλῶν	δηλούμενος

277. The declension of the present active participle of verbs in -εω and of verbs in -οω is precisely the same. Hence the paradigm of φιλῶν serves also for δηλῶν.

τῖμῶν	τῖμῶσα	τῖμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
τῖμῶντος	τῖμώσης	τῖμῶντος	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
τῖμῶντι	τῖμώσῃ	τῖμῶντι	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
τῖμῶντα	τῖμῶσαν	τῖμῶν	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν
τῖμῶν	τῖμῶσα	τῖμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
τῖμῶντε	τῖμῶσᾱ	τῖμῶντε	φιλοῦντε	φιλούσᾱ	φιλοῦντε
τῖμῶντοιν	τῖμῶσαιιν	τῖμῶντοιν	φιλοῦντοιν	φιλούσαιιν	φιλοῦντοιν
τῖμῶντες	τῖμῶσαι	τῖμῶντα	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
τῖμῶντων	τῖμῶσῶν	τῖμῶντων	φιλοῦντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλοῦντων
τῖμῶσι	τῖμῶσαις	τῖμῶσι	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
τῖμῶντας	τῖμῶσᾱς	τῖμῶντα	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσᾱς	φιλοῦντα

The middle participles τῖμώμενος, φιλούμενος, δηλούμενος present no irregularity.

278. VOCABULARY.

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος)	(1) deem worthy of, w. gen. (2) think proper, claim
ἀφ-ικνέομαι	come
γῆρας (γηρασ-) τό	old age



δηλώω (δηλός <i>clear</i> )	<i>make manifest</i>
δουλώω (δοῦλος)	<i>enslave</i>
εἰσ-βάλλω	<i>invade, lit. throw (one's self) into</i>
ἐλευθερόω (ἐλεύθερος <i>free</i> )	<i>set free</i>
ἐν-οικέω (οἶκος)	<i>dwell in, inhabit</i>
Κίμων	<i>Cimon, son of Miltiades, great naval commander</i>
Κορσώτη	<i>Corsōtē, city in Asia Minor</i>
λοχαγός	<i>captain, of company</i>
Μάσκας	<i>Mascas, river in Asia Minor</i>
μισθόω	<i>hire</i>
μῆτριοι 3	<i>ten thousand</i>
περι-ρρέω	<i>flow about</i>
συλ-λέγω (σύν, λέγω)	<i>collect (cf. Lat. col-ligo)</i>
συλλογή	<i>collection, levy</i>
φοβέομαι (φόβος) dep.	<i>fear</i>
χρήμα (χρηματ-) τό	<i>thing for use (pl. money)</i>

## 279. EXERCISE.

1. ἀξιοῦμεν ταῦτα τὰ χρήματα, οὐχ ὥς (as) δῶρον, ἀλλ' ὥς μισθόν. 2. Κῦρος ἡξίου τὰς Ἑλληνικὰς πόλεις δίδοσθαι αὐτῷ. 3. ἄμεινόν ἐστιν ἀδικεῖσθαι ἢ ἀδικεῖν. 4. Ξέρξης εἰσβάλλει εἰς Ἑλλάδα ἵνα δουλοῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας (*habitantes*). 5. δεῖ τὸν στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν στρατηγὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους. 6. Κίμων ἡλευθέρου τὰς Ἑλληνικὰς πόλεις ἀπὸ τοῦ ζυγοῦ τῶν Περσῶν. 7. πορευόμενοι διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκᾱν ποταμόν, ἐνὸς πλέθρου τὸ εὖρος. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' ἦν αὐτῇ Κορσώτη, περι-ερρεῖτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ (by) τοῦ Μάσκου· μένοντες οὖν ἐνταῦθα τρεῖς ἡμέρᾱς ἐπορίζοντο σῖτα.

1. Thus Cyrus shows whom he honors. 2. Thus Cyrus was showing whom he was honoring. 3. Thus it was shown who were honored by Cyrus. 4. I

think-it-proper that the brave should rule the country which they conquer. 5. We deem worthy of honor those-who-honor (τοὺς τιμῶντας) old age. 6. Cyrus hires ten thousand Greeks, collecting them from the Greek cities. He appoints (as) generals and captains those-who-collect (τοὺς συλλέγοντας) the soldiers in the Greek cities. The oldest (πρεσβύτατος) of the generals was Clearchus. 7. Thus Cyrus was making for himself the levy.

## LESSON L.

*Classified Vocabulary of Nouns, Adjectives, and  
Verbs in Lessons XXIV-XLIX.*

## 280.

NOUNS.			
Ἀβραάμ		ἄμαξα	wagon
(indeclinable)	<i>Abraham</i>	ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ	ascent
ἀδελφή	<i>sister</i>	ἀνάγκη	necessity
Ἀθηνᾶ	Athēna, guard- ian-goddess of Athens	ἀνδρεία	courage
Ἀθῆναι	<i>Athens</i>	άνήρ, άνδρός, ό	man (Lat. vir)
Αἰδης	<i>Hades</i> , (1) god of lower world, (2) lower world	Ἀπόλλων, ό (135)	Apollo, god of music and song
Αἰθίοψ, -οπος, ό	<i>Aethiopian</i>	Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, ἡ	Artemis, sister of foreg. Lat. Diana
αἷμα, -ατος, τό	<i>blood</i>	ἀρετή	virtue, worth
αἶξ, αἰγός, ό & ἡ	<i>goat</i>	Ἄρης, -εως, ό	Arēs, god of war, Lat. Mars
αἰών, -ῶνος, ό	<i>age</i>	Ἀρκαδίᾱ	<i>Arcadia</i>
ἄκρον	<i>height, summit</i>	Ἀρταξέρξης	Artaxerxes, King of Persia
ἀκρόπολις, -εως, ἡ	<i>citadel</i>	ἄρχων, -οντος, ό	ruler
ἀλήθεια	<i>truth</i>	ἀσπίς, -ιδος, ἡ	shield
		Ἀχιλλεύς, -έως	Achilles

βάλανος	nut, acorn; date	ἐλπίς, -ιδος, ἡ	hope
βασίλειᾱ	kingdom	ἔπος, ἔπους, τό	word; pl. Epic
βασίλεια, τὰ	palace		poetry
βασιλεύς, -έως	king	ἐργάτης	work-man
βίος	life	ἔρις, -ιδος, ἡ	strife
βουλή	(1) will, counsel, (2) council	ἑρμηνεύς, -έως, ὁ	interpreter
βροτός		ἑταῖρος	comrade
(poetic word) mortal		ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year
γάλα, -ακτος, τό	milk	εὖρος, εὖρους, τό	breadth
γαστήρ, -τρός, ὁ	stomach	Εὐρώπη	Europe
γένος, γένους, τό	race, kin	Εὐφράτης	Euphrates
γέρας, γέρας, τό	gift of honor	ζυγόν	yoke
γέρων, -οντος, ὁ	old man	Ἡρακλῆς, -οῦς, ὁ	Heracles, nation- al hero of Greece
γῆρας, γῆρας, τό	old age		
γιγᾶς, -αντος, ὁ	giant	ἥρως, ἥρωος, ὁ	hero
γονεύς, -έως, ὁ	sire, progenitor; pl. parents	θάνατος	death
γόνυ, -ατος, τό	knee	Θάψακος	Thapsacus
γράμμα, -ατος, τό	writing, letter	Θερμοπύλαι	Thermopylae
γραῦς, γραῖός, ἡ	old woman	θέρως, θέρους, τό	summer
γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ	woman, wife	θήρ, -ρός, ὁ	wild-beast
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ	deity	θής, θητός, ὁ	serf
δάκτυλος	finger	Θουκυδίδης	Thucydides
Δαρείος	Darius	θρίξ, τριχός, ἡ	hair
δημαγωγός	demagogue	θυγάτηρ, -ρός, ἡ	daughter
διάβασις, -εως, ἡ	crossing	ιερεύς, -έως, ὁ	priest
διδάσκαλος	teacher	Ἰθάκη	Ithaca, isl.-realm of Ulysses
δικαιοσύνη	justice	Ἰλιάς, -άδος, ἡ	Iliad
δόγμα, -ατος, τό	opinion, dogma	Ἰσσοί	Issi or Issus
δόξα	opinion, glory	ἱστορίᾱ	history
δόρυ, -ατος, τό	spear	ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ	strength
δράκων, -οντος, ὁ	dragon	ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ	fish
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ	power	Ἰωάννης	John
εἶδος, εἶδους, τό	form, appear- ance, kind	κάλλος, -ους, τό	beauty
εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ	image, likeness	Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ	Calypso
Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ	Hellas, Greece	καρπός	fruit
ἐλευθερίᾱ	freedom	κατάβασις, -εως, ἡ	descent
Ἕλληνες, -ήνων, Hellenes, Greeks		κέρας, -ατος, τό	(1) horn, (2) wing (of army)
Ἑλλήσποντος, ἡ	Hellespont	Κέρβερος	Cerberus

κεφαλή	head	μέρος, μέρους, τό	part
κήρυξ, -ῦκος, ὁ	herald	μήκος, μήκους, τό	length
Κιλικίᾱ	Cilicia	μήν, μηνός, ὁ	month
Κίλικες, -ίκων, οἱ	Cilicians	μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother
Κίλισσα	Cilician woman	Μιλτιάδης	Miltiades
Κίμων, -ωνος, ὁ	Cimon	μισθός	pay
Κίρκη	Circé	μισθοφόρος	pay-bearer, mer- cenary soldier
Κλέαρχος	Clearchus	μνᾶ	mina (sum of money, about \$17)
κλέπτης	thief, brigand	μονή	(1) staying, (2) mansion
κλίμαξ, -ακος, ἡ	ladder, stair-case	ναός	temple
κλοπή	theft	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	ship
κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ	thief	νεφέλη	cloud
κνημίδες, -ίδων, αἱ	greaves	νίκη	victory
Κορσώτη	Corsoté	νόμος	law
κρέας, τό	flesh	νόστος	return
κρήνη	fountain	νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night
Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ	Cretan	ξένος	(1) stranger, (2) guest-friend
κρίσις, -εως, ἡ	decision, trial	Ξενοφών,	Xenophon, author
κτηῖμα, -ατος, τό	possession	-ώντος, ὁ	of Anabasis
Κύδνος	Cydnus	Ξέρξης	Xerxes
Κύκλωψ, -ωπος, ὁ	Cyclops	ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	sword, straight and often double-edged
Κύριος	Lord	ξύλον	wood
Κῦρος	Cyrus	Ὀδυσσεῖᾱ	Odyssey
κυών, κυνός, ὁ & ἡ	dog, hound	Ὀδυσσεύς,	
Λεωνίδας	Leonidas, hero of Thermopylae	-έως, ὁ	Odysseus, Ulysses
Λητώ, Λητοῦς, ἡ	Leto, Lat. Latona	οἷστος	arrow
λίθος	stone	δμβρος	shower
λίμνη	lake	ὄνομα, -ατος, τό	name
λίμος	hunger, famine	ὀπλίτης	heavy-armed sol- dier
λοιμός	pestilence	ὄπλον	utensil, piece of armor
λοχαγός	captain	ὄπλα	arms
Λυκούργος	Lycurgus	ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain
μάθημα, -ατος, τό	lesson	ὄρνις, -νιθος, ὁ & ἡ	bird, fowl
μαθητής	learner, scholar		
Μάσκας	Mascas		
μάχη	battle		
μέλαν, -ανος, τό	ink		
μέλι, -ιτος, τό	honey		
μέλος, μέλους, τό	(1) limb, member, (2) song		

οὔρα	(1) <i>tail</i> , (2) <i>rear</i> (of army)	σάλπιγξ, -γγος, ἡ <i>trumpet</i>
οὖς, ὠτός, τό	<i>ear</i>	Σάρδεις, -ων, αἱ <i>Sardis</i>
Οὔτις	<i>Nobody</i>	σιγή <i>silence</i>
ὀφθαλμός	<i>eye</i>	σκηνή <i>tent</i>
παιδεία	<i>education</i>	σκήπτρον <i>sceptre</i>
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ & ἡ	<i>boy or girl</i>	Σκύθης <i>Scythian</i>
παρασάγγης	<i>parasang, league</i> (3½ miles)	Σόλων <i>Solon</i>
Παρθενόν,	<i>Parthenon, tem-</i>	Σπαρτιάτης <i>Spartan</i>
-ῶνος, ὁ	<i>ple of Athena</i>	στάδιον <i>stadium, furlong</i> (606 ft.)
Παρύσατις,	<i>Parysatis, mother</i>	στάδιοι pl. of foreg. <i>stadia</i>
-ιδος, ἡ	<i>of Artaxerxes</i> and Cyrus	σταθμός (1) <i>station</i> , (2) <i>day's march</i>
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	<i>father</i>	στάσις, -ews, ἡ <i>faction</i>
πατρίς, -ιδος, ἡ	<i>father-land</i>	στόμα, -ατος, τό (1) <i>mouth</i> , (2) <i>van (of army)</i>
πεδῖον	<i>plain</i>	στράτευμα,
Πηνελόπη	<i>Penelopé, wife of</i> Ulysses	-ατος, τό <i>army</i>
Πηλεΐς, ἑως	<i>Peleus</i>	στρατόπεδον <i>camp</i>
Πελοπόννησος, ἡ	<i>Peloponnēsus</i>	συλλογή <i>collection, levy</i>
πήχυς, -ews, ὁ	<i>cubit</i>	Σύρος <i>Syrian</i>
πίσσα	<i>pitch</i>	σῶμα, -ατος, τό <i>body</i>
πλέθρον	<i>plethrum (101 ft.)</i>	σωτήρ, -ήρος, ὁ <i>savior</i>
πλοῦτος	<i>wealth</i>	σωτηρία <i>safety</i>
ποιμήν, -ένος, ὁ	<i>shepherd</i>	τάξις, -ews, ἡ <i>order, arrangement</i>
πόλεμος	<i>war</i>	ταῦρος <i>bull</i>
πόλις, -ews, ἡ	<i>city</i>	τάφος <i>tomb</i>
πολιτεία	<i>commonwealth</i>	τείχος, τείχους, τό <i>wall</i>
πόνος	<i>toil, labor</i>	τέλος, τέλους, τό <i>end</i>
πόντος	<i>deep sea</i>	τέκνον <i>child</i>
ποτόν	<i>drink</i>	τέρας, -ατος, τό <i>portent, monster</i>
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	<i>foot</i>	τόξον <i>bow</i>
πρᾶγμα, τό	<i>thing</i>	τοξότης <i>bow-man</i>
πράξις, -ews, ἡ	<i>action</i>	τόπος <i>place</i>
προδότης	<i>traitor</i>	τραῦμα, -ατος, τό <i>wound</i>
Πυθαγόρας	<i>Pythagoras</i>	τυραννίς, -ιδος, ἡ <i>absolute power,</i> <i>tyranny</i>
Πύραμος	<i>Pyramus</i>	τύραννος <i>tyrant</i>
ρήτωρ, -ορος, ὁ	<i>orator</i>	τύχη <i>fortune</i>
ρίζα	<i>root</i>	ὑβρις, -ews, ἡ <i>wanton arrogance</i>
σαλπιγκτής	<i>trumpeter</i>	ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό <i>water</i>

ὄλη	<i>forest</i>
ὑπνος	<i>sleep</i>
ὑποζύγιον	<i>pack-animal</i>
ὑψος, ὑψους, τό	<i>height</i>
φιλαργυρία	<i>love of money</i>
φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ	<i>vein</i>
Φοινίκη	<i>Phoenicia</i>
φυλακή	<i>watching, guard</i>
φύλαξ, -ακος, ὁ	<i>sentry</i>
Φύλαξ	<i>Watch</i>
φωνή	<i>voice</i>
Χάλος	<i>Chalus</i>
χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ	(1) <i>grace</i> , (2) <i>thanks</i>
χαμών, -ώνος, ὁ	(1) <i>storm</i> , (2) <i>winter</i>
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	<i>hand</i>
χρήματα	<i>money</i>
Ψάρος	<i>Psarus</i>
ψεύδος,	
ψεύδους, τό	<i>lie</i>
ψυχή	(1) <i>life</i> , (2) <i>soul</i>

## ADJECTIVES.

ἀθάνατος 2	<i>immortal</i>
Ἀθηναῖος 3	<i>Athenian</i>
ἀκριβής 2	<i>exact</i>
ἄκρος 3	<i>at the end or top</i>
ἀληθής 2	<i>true</i>
ἀναρίθμητος 2	<i>innumerable</i>
ἀνδρείος 3	<i>brave</i>
ἄξιος 3	<i>worthy</i>
ἀπόλεκτος 2	<i>selected</i>
ἄρρην 2	<i>male</i>
βαθύς 3	<i>deep</i>
βάρβαρος 2	<i>barbarian</i>
βαρύς 3	<i>heavy, deep</i>
βασίλειος 2	<i>royal</i>
βραδύς 3	<i>slow</i>
βραχύς 3	<i>short</i>
γλυκύς 3	<i>sweet</i>

δεξιός 3	<i>right</i>
δίκαιος 3	<i>just</i>
ἕκαστος 3	<i>each</i>
ἐλεύθερος 3	<i>free</i>
ἔσχατος 3	<i>extreme</i>
εὐγενής 2	<i>well-born, noble</i>
εὐδαίμων 2	<i>prosperous</i>
Εὐξείνιος 2	<i>Euxine</i>
εὐρύς 3	<i>broad</i>
ἐχθρός 3	<i>hostile (of private enmity)</i>
ἡδύς 3	<i>sweet</i>
ἡμισυς 3	<i>half</i>
ἡσυχος 2	<i>quiet</i>
θαυμάσιος 3	<i>wonderful</i>
θηλυς 3	<i>female</i>
ἱερός 3	<i>sacred, hallowed</i>
κενός 3	<i>empty, vain</i>
κοῦφος 3	<i>light</i>
μάκαρ 1	<i>blessed</i>
μακάριος 3	<i>blessed</i>
μέγας 3	<i>great</i>
μέλας 3	<i>black</i>
μέσος 3	<i>middle</i>
μόνος 3	<i>sole, only</i>
μύριοι 3	<i>ten-thousand</i>
νεκρός 3	<i>dead</i>
οἰκούμενος 3	<i>inhabited</i>
ὀλίγος 3	<i>little, few</i>
ὀξύς 3	<i>sharp</i>
πατρῷος 3	<i>paternal</i>
πᾶς 3	<i>all</i>
πένης 2	<i>poor</i>
Περσικός 3	<i>Persian</i>
πικρός 3	<i>bitter</i>
πίων 2	<i>fat</i>
πλεθριαῖος 3	<i>of a plethrum</i>
πλήρης 2	<i>full</i>
πλούσιος 3	<i>rich</i>
πολέμιος 3	<i>warlike, hostile</i>
πολιτικός 3	<i>political</i>

πολύς 3	much, pl. many	βουλεύω	plan
πονηρός 3	bad, worthless	βουλεύομαι	deliberate
πόσος 3	how much?	βούλομαι (dep.)	wish
πρεσβύτερος 3	older	γίγνομαι (dep.)	become
πρότερος 3	former	(δέω) δεῖ, εἶδει	is (was) necessary
πτεράει 3	winged	δέχομαι (dep.)	receive
πτωχός 3	poor	δηλώω	make manifest
ρήδιος 3	easy	δια-δίδωμι	distribute
ρητορικός 3	rhetorical	διδάσκω	teach
σαφής 2	clear	δίδωμι	give
σοφός 3	wise	διψάω	thirst
σώφρων 2	discreet	διώκω	pursue
ταχύς 3	quick, swift	δοκεῖ, ἐδόκει	it seems (seemed)
τίμιος 3 and 2	valued, precious		best
τριακόσιος 3	three hundred	δουλόω	enslave
τριήρης 2	three-banked	δύναμαι (dep.)	be able
τριᾶκοντα	thirty	ἐθελώ	wish, be willing
ὑλήεις 3	wooded	εἰσ-βάλλω	invade
ὑστερος 3	later	ἐκ-δίδωμι	give forth, empty
ὑψηλός 3	lofty	ἐλευθερώω	free
φωνήεις 3	vocal, speaking	ἐλπίζω	hope
χαλεπός 3	hard	ἐν-οικέω	inhabit
χαρίεις 3	graceful	ἐν-τίθημι	place in
ψευδής 2	false	ἐξ-αγγέλλω	announce

## VERBS.

ἀγγέλλω	announce	ἐπίσταμαι (dep.)	know
ἀδικέω	do wrong	ἐπι-τίθημι	place upon
ἀκούω	hear	ἐπι-τίθεμαι	attack
ἀνα-γινώσκω	read	ἐρίζω	quarrel
ἀξιόω	(1) deem worthy, (2) claim	ἐρωτάω	ask
ἀπ-αγγέλλω	report	ἐστι	it is permitted
ἀπειμι	am absent	εὐρίσκω	find
ἀπο-δίδωμι	give back	ζάω	live
ἀπο-τίθημι	put away	ζεύγνυμι	yoke, join
ἀρπάζω	plunder	ζητέω	ask after, seek for
ἄρχω	rule	ἦκω	am come
ἀφικνέομαι	arrive	ἦμαι (dep.)	sit
ἀφ-ίσταμαι	revolt	ἡττάομαι	be worsted
ἀφ-ίστημι	set off	θαυμάζω	wonder, admire
		θύω	sacrifice (victim)
		ἵημι	send

ἔμαι	(1) <i>charge</i> , (2) <i>hasten</i> , (3) <i>desire</i>	πύμπλημι	<i>fill</i>
κάθ-ημαι (dep.)	<i>sit down, encamp</i>	πίπτω	<i>fall</i>
καλέω	<i>call</i>	ποιέω	<i>make</i>
κατα-λαμβάνω	<i>overtake, find</i>	πολεμέω	<i>wage war</i>
κείμεαι (dep.)	(1) <i>lie</i> , (2) <i>be placed</i>	πορεύω	<i>carry</i>
κελεύω	<i>command</i>	πορεύομαι	<i>proceed</i>
κηρύσσω	<i>proclaim (by herald)</i>	προ-δίδωμι	<i>betray</i>
κλέπτω	<i>steal</i>	προσ-ελαύνω	<i>march toward</i>
κρέμαμαι (dep.)	<i>hang, be suspended</i>	προσ-έχω	<i>attend</i>
κρίνω	<i>distinguish, decide, judge</i>	ρέω	<i>flow</i>
κρύπτω	<i>hide</i>	ρήγνυμι	<i>break</i>
κτάομαι (dep.)	<i>acquire</i>	ρίπτω	<i>throw</i>
κωλύω	<i>hinder</i>	σαλπίζω	<i>blow trumpet</i>
μέλλω	<i>intend</i>	σημαίνω	<i>signify, make sign</i>
μετα-πέμπω	<i>send after</i>	σιωπάω	<i>be silent</i>
μετα-πέμπομαι	<i>summon</i>	στέργω	<i>love (of natural affection)</i>
μίγνυμι	<i>mix</i>	συγ-γράφω	<i>recount (as historian)</i>
μισθόω	<i>hire</i>	συλ-λαμβάνω	<i>apprehend, arrest</i>
νικάω	<i>be victor, conquer</i>	συλ-λέγω	<i>collect</i>
νομίζω	(1) <i>consider</i> , (2) <i>think</i>	συν-τίθημι	<i>put together</i>
οικέω	<i> dwell</i>	συν-τίθεμαι	<i>agree</i>
οἶομαι (dep.)	<i>think</i>	σφίζω	<i>save</i>
οἶχομαι	<i>am gone</i>	τελευτάω	(1) <i>end</i> , (2) <i>die</i>
ὀνίνημι	<i>profit, benefit</i>	τίθημι	<i>put, place</i>
ὀρμέω	<i>be moored</i>	τίκτω	<i>beget, bring forth</i>
παίω	<i>strike</i>	τιμάω	<i>honor</i>
παρα-δίδωμι	<i>hand over</i>	τιτρώσκω	<i>wound</i>
πάρ-ειμι	<i>be present</i>	τρέχω	<i>run</i>
πείθω	<i>persuade</i>	φοβέομαι	<i>fear</i>
πειθομαι	<i>obey</i>	φυλάττω	<i>guard</i>
πεινάω	<i>thirst</i>	φυλάττομαι	<i>to be on one's guard against</i>
περι-ρρέω	<i>flow about</i>	χράομαι (dep.)	<i>use</i>
		χρή	<i>it is necessary or proper</i>
		ψεύδομαι (dep.)	<i>lie</i>



## LESSON LI.

*Formation and Inflection of Future Active and Middle.*

Grammar: §§ 420, 421 a and b, 422; 315, 326.

**281.** THE present system (including the present and imperfect tenses) has now been completed, both in the  $\mu$  conjugation and in the  $\omega$  conjugation (common and contracted form). The formation of the other tenses must next be taken up.

Two things must be kept in mind: (1) that these tenses are distinguished from those already learned, not (as in Latin) by different endings (all the personal endings of the verb have already been learned, §§ 375–382), but by their *tense-stems*; (2) that these tense-stems are formed, not from the present-stem, but from a more elementary form lying back of the present-stem, and called the *theme*.

The themes of  $\tau\acute{\iota}\mu\acute{\alpha}\omega$ ,  $\phi\acute{\iota}\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ ,  $\delta\eta\lambda\acute{o}\omega$ , it has been shown, are  $\tau\acute{\iota}\mu\alpha-$ ,  $\phi\acute{\iota}\lambda\epsilon-$ ,  $\delta\eta\lambda\omicron-$ . From them the present-stems  $\tau\acute{\iota}\mu\alpha^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}-$ ,  $\phi\acute{\iota}\lambda\epsilon^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}-$ ,  $\delta\eta\lambda\omicron^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}-$ , are formed by simply adding the variable vowel. The same relation exists between the theme  $\lambda\bar{\upsilon}-$  and the present-stem  $\lambda\bar{\upsilon}^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}-$ .

**282.** In the formation of the future-stem three classes of themes must be distinguished: (1) vowel-themes, including such verbs as  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\omega$  and all contract-verbs; (2) mute-themes; (3) liquid-themes.

The future-stem is formed, in the two first of these classes, by adding  $\sigma^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}$  to the theme; in the third class, by adding  $\epsilon^{\circ}|_{\epsilon}$ .

Some modifications occur in connection with the addition of these suffixes: (1) vowel-themes lengthen

the final vowel if it is naturally short; (2) mute-themes so unite with the following  $\sigma$  of the suffix that labials with  $\sigma$  produce  $\psi$ , palatals with  $\sigma$  produce  $\xi$ , while linguals fall away before  $\sigma$ ; (3) liquid-themes contract the suffix  $\epsilon^\circ|$ -, like the present of contract-verbs in  $-\epsilon\omega$ .

The future system has in general *the same inflection as the present system*, save that only four modes, the indicative, optative, infinitive, and participle, are found in it.

**283. RULE 1.**—A common way of expressing purpose in Greek is by a relative clause with its verb in the future indicative, cf. § 162.

**284. RULE 2.**—Another common way of expressing purpose is by the future participle, cf. § 162.

### 285. VOCABULARY.

			Fut. Act.	Fut. Midd.
λύω	(λύ-)	vowel-themes	λύσω	λύσομαι
κελεύω	(κελευ-)		κελεύσω	κελεύσομαι
τιμάω	(τίμα-)		τιμήσω	τιμήσομαι
αἰτέω	(αιτε-)		αἰτήσω	αἰτήσομαι
ποιέω	(ποιε-)		ποιήσω	ποιήσομαι
δουλόω	(δουλο-)		δουλώσω	δουλώσομαι
πέμπω	(πεμπ-)	mute-themes	πέμψω	πέμψομαι
διώκω	(διωκ-)		διώξω	διώξομαι
ἄγω	(αγ-)		ἄξω	ἄξομαι
συν-λέγω	(συν-λεγ)		συνλέξω	συνλέξομαι
εὐχομαι	(ευχο-)		<i>pray, νοιο</i>	εὐξομαι
θαυμάζω	(θαυμαδ-)		θαυμάσω	θαυμάσομαι
ἀγγέλλω	(αγγελ-)	liquid-themes	ἀγγελῶ	ἀγγελοῦμαι
ἀμύνω	(αμυν-)		<i>ward off</i> ἀμυνῶ	ἀμυνοῦμαι
ἀπο-κρίνομαι	(κριν-)		<i>answer</i>	ἀποκρινοῦμαι

ἀσφαλής 2	<i>safe, secure</i>
ἐπιτήδεια	<i>provisions</i>
θυμός	<i>soul, passion, feeling</i>
κρατέω	<i>be master of (w. gen.)</i>
σπονδή	<i>libation, wine poured out on ground as offering to gods</i>
σπονδαί, pl. of σπονδή	<i>truce</i>
Τισσαφέρνης, -ους (193)	<i>Tissaphernes, a Persian satrap, dangerous foe of the Greeks</i>
Φαλῖνος	<i>Phalῖnus, a Greek, in the serv- ice of the Persian king</i>
Χειρίσοφος	<i>Cheirisophus, a Spartan gen- eral, successor of Clearchus</i>

## 286. EXERCISE.

1. ἐὰν ἡμᾶς ὁρῶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, λύσουσι τὴν γέφυ-  
ραν. 2. ἐὰν φεύγωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, διώξομεν αὐτοὺς  
μέχρι τῆς κώμης ἣν ὁρῶμεν. 3. οἱ ἐμὲ τιμῶσι, τούτους  
ἐγὼ τιμήσω, λέγει Θεός. 4. ἐὰν βούλῃ, λέγει Χειρί-  
σοφος πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, μενούμεν ἐνταῦθα. 5. οἱ Πέρ-  
σαι πέμπουσιν ἀγγέλους εἰς Ἀθήνας καὶ Σπάρτην

{ οἱ αἰτήσουσιν  
αἰτήσοντας ὕδωρ καὶ γῆν.  
ἵνα αἰτῶσιν

6. οἱ πολέμιοι μέγα στράτευμα συλλέξουσιν καὶ  
ἡμῖν πολεμήσουσιν. 7. Θεῷ μᾶλλον ἢ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις  
πείσομαι (πείθομαι). 8. σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ,  
ἡρώτᾳ (ἐρωτάω) Φαλῖνος, ὁ παρὰ βασιλέως ἄγγελος;  
9. ἀποκρίνου, ἔλεγε Κλέαρχος, ὅτι τὰ αὐτὰ ἡμῖν δοκεῖ,  
ἀ καὶ δοκεῖ βασιλεῖ.

10. Ζήσεις βίον κράτιστον ἣν θυμοῦ κρατῆς.

1. We will ward off the enemy from the walls of  
our city. 2. I will lead all the captains to this place,  
says Clearchus to Tissaphernes. 3. We will defend

ourselves. 4. If you ask me what good things are secure, I shall answer, virtue and wisdom. 5. The messengers came to lead the Greeks to (πρός) the provisions. 6. What shall we reply to the king?

---

## LESSON LII.

### *Future Active and Middle, concluded.*

Grammar: §§ 337, 339, 341, 345, 349, 350, 351, 352. Learn only the first two thirds of the second column of the paradigms indicated by each section number. Prepare the inflection as well as the synopsis of the forms.

**287.** THE object of this lesson is to give further practice (both oral and in writing) in the formation and inflection of the future system.

It will be seen that it makes no difference whatever, as far as the formation of the future-stem from the theme is concerned, whether a verb belongs in the present system to the *-ω* conjugation or to the *-μι* conjugation.

Such verbs as βαίνω (βα-), βάλλω (βαλ-), γιγνώσκω (γνο-), δείκνυμι (δεικ-), δίδωμι (δο-), ἵστημι (στα-), ῥίπτω (ῥιφ-), φυλάττω (φυλακ-), illustrate that the theme is not always immediately apparent from the present-stem. Verbs are, in fact, divided into seven classes, according to the relation of the present-stem to the theme, and these classes, which are explained in §§ 392-405 of the grammar, will soon be learned.

The future of an active verb is sometimes found only in the middle form. In such cases the future is usually deponent, i. e., has the active meaning.

## 288. VOCABULARY.

		Fut. Act.	Fut. Midd.
βαίνω	(βα-)		βήσομαι
βάλλω	(βαλ-)	βαλῶ	βαλοῦμαι
προ-βάλλομαι	τὰ ὅπλα	<i>present arms</i>	
γινώσκω	(γνο-) <i>learn to know, recognize</i>		γνώσομαι
δείκνυμι	(δεικ-)	δείξω	δείξομαι
δίδωμι	(δο-)	δώσω	δώσομαι
δουλεύω	(δουλευ-) <i>be slave</i>	δουλεύσω	δουλεύσομαι
δύναμαι	(δυνα-)		δυνήσομαι
ἔχω	(εχ-, orig. σεχ-)	ἔξω, σχήσω	ἔξομαι, σχήσομαι
ἵστημι	(στα-)	στήσω	στήσομαι
κωλύω	(κωλυ-)	κωλύσω	κωλύσομαι
λέγω	(λεγ-)	λέξω	
ῥίπτω	(ῥιφ-)	ῥίψω	
τίθημι	(θε-)	θήσω	θήσομαι
τίθεμαι	τὰ ὅπλα	lit. <i>place one's arms</i> (on ground) ; hence, <i>ground arms, halt, surrender</i>	
φυλάττω	(φυλακ-)	φυλάξω	φυλάξομαι
ἀθυμία		<i>despondency</i>	
εἰ μὴ		<i>if not, unless</i>	
ἐπιτήδεια, τά		<i>provisions</i>	
ὅπου, rel. adv. of place		<i>where</i>	
φυγάς (φυγαδ-) ὁ		<i>fugitive</i>	

## 289. EXERCISE.

1. Μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς, ἐγὼ οὐ διώξω τούτους τοὺς φυγάδας, ἀλλὰ πάντες γνώσονται ὅτι ἐμὲ κάκιον ποιούσιν ἢ ἐγὼ αὐτοὺς ποιῶ. 2. δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπου τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχομεν. 3. πῶς ἔχομεν ἐπιτήδεια πορευόμενοι διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ; 4. ἡ χώρᾱ αὐτὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια παρ-έξει. 5. τίνες, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς οἱ πολῖται, τὴν πατρίδα φυλάξουσιν ; 6. ἐὰν μέρος τι τοῦ στρατεύματος φεύγῃ, τοῦτο ἀθυμλίᾳ παρέξει πᾶσι τοῖς στρατιώταις. 7.

ὅστις οὐ φυλάξει τὰ μῖκρά, ἀπο-βαλεῖ καὶ τὰ μείζονα.  
 8. μετὰ ταῦτα (postea) Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη πρὸς Κλέ-  
 αρχον· ἐὰν βούλῃ ἔρχεσθαι παρ' ἐμέ, λέξω τοὺς πρὸς  
 ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὅτι ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ ἐπι-  
 βουλεύεις. 9. ἐὰν διώκωμεν ἔτι τοὺς φεύγοντας, ῥέψου-  
 σιν ἑαυτοὺς ἀπ' ἄκρᾱς τῆς πέτρᾱς.

1. We will name (λέγω) those who say this. 2. The sailors will throw with their own hands the cargo out of the transport. 3. The Greeks will ground their arms about (περί w. acc.) the tent of Cyrus. 4. I will command the hoplites to halt. 5. If you conquer us, we will hand over our arms. 6. What shall we answer to the messengers of the king? 7. If you wish to cross the river, no one will hinder you. 8. I recognize the voice of these men, for I was-a-slave in their country five years.

---

### LESSON LIII.

*Formation of First Aorist-Stem, and Inflection of the First Aorist System of λύω and φάινω in the Active Voice.*

Grammar: §§ 428, 429, 431, 433 a and b, 434; 316 first column, 327 first column.

**290.** THE aorist indicative corresponds in meaning to the ordinary past tense in English, or to the perfect indefinite or historical perfect in Latin. Thus, *I came, I saw, I conquered*, are aorists. But in the subjunctive, optative, imperative, and infinitive, the

aorist does not necessarily refer to past time; but differs from the present only in that it refers to a single act.

In order to form the first aorist-stem it is necessary to know the *theme* of the verb. That known, the formation is the same, whether the verb be of the -ω or the -μ conjugation.

**291.** Vowel- and mute-themes form their first aorist-stem by adding -σα to the theme. The lengthening of a final short theme-vowel before σ; the union of π-mutes and κ-mutes with σ, forming ψ and ξ; and the disappearance of τ-mutes before σ,—occur precisely as in the formation of the future-stem.

Liquid-themes, instead of adding -σα, reject the σ (leaving -α) and lengthen the theme-vowel as a compensation. Thus: φαίνω (φαν-) makes 1 aor.-stem φηνα- not φανσα-, and μένω (μεν-) makes 1 aor.-stem μεινα- not μενσα-.

As the aorist indicative is a past tense, it takes the augment (syllabic or temporal) and the endings of the past tenses.

**292.** SYNOPSIS OF 1 AOR. ACT. OF λύω (λυ-), πέμπω (πεμπ-), φαίνω (φαν-).

	1 AOR.-STEM λυσα-	1 AOR.-STEM πεμψα-	1 AOR.-STEM φηνα-
Ind.	ἔλυσα	ἔπεμψα	ἔφηνα
Sub.	λύσω	πέμψω	φήνω
Opt.	λύσαιμι	πέμψαιμι	φήναιμι
Imv.	λύσον (433 a)	πέμψον (433 a)	φήνον (433 a)
Inf.	λύσαι (433 a)	πέμψαι (433 a)	φήναι (433 a)
Ptc.	λύσῃς (242 end)	πέμψῃς (242 end)	φήνῃς (242 end)

INFLECTION OF THE 1 AOR. INDIC. ACT. OF THE ABOVE  
VERBS.

Sing. 1	ἔλυσα (453a)	ἔπεμψα (483 a)	ἔφηνα (483 a)
2	ἔλυσας	ἔπεμψας	ἔφηνας
3	ἔλυσε(ν)	ἔπεμψε(ν)	ἔφηνε(ν)
Dual 2	ἔλύσατον	ἔπέμψατον	ἔφήνατον
3	ἔλυσάτην	ἔπεμψάτην	ἔφηνάτην
Plu. 1	ἔλύσαμεν	ἔπέμψαμεν	ἔφήναμεν
2	ἔλύσατε	ἔπέμψατε	ἔφήνατε
3	ἔλυσαν	ἔπεμψαν	ἔφηναν

Write out the 1 aor. indic. 1 pers. sing. from  
κελεύω (κελευ-), τιμάω (τιμα-), ποιέω (ποιε-), δουλόω  
(δουλο-), γράφω (γραφ-), μένω (μεν-), ἵστημι (στα-).

293. VOCABULARY.

παρ-αγγέλλω (-αγγελ-) obj. in dat.	<i>give orders to</i>
Πελοποννήσιος 3	<i>Peloponnesian</i>
πολιορκέω (πολιορκε-)	<i>besiege</i>
πρεσβευτής (only in sing.)	<i>ambassador</i>
πρέσβεις (chiefly in pl., 216, 17)	<i>ambassadors</i>
στράτευμα, -ατος, τό	<i>army</i>
φρουράρχος	<i>commander of garrison</i>
Μίλητος ἡ	<i>Milētus, important coast-</i> <i>city of Asia Minor</i>

294. EXERCISE.

1. Κύρος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ὀπλίτας τὰ ὅπλα προβάλλεσθαι. 2. παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίουσ ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους (*quam plurimos et quam fortissimos*). 3. Κύρος, οὕτω συλλέξας στράτευμα, ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, πόλιν Τισσαφέρνους. 4. Δημοσθένης ἔπεισε (πείθω) τοὺς



Ἀθηναίους πρέσβεις πέμψαι πρὸς βασιλέα. 5. Ζεὺς Ἑρμῇν ἔπεμψε παρὰ Καλυψὶν κελεύοντα ἀπο-πέμψαι Ὀδυσσεά εἰς Ἰθάκην. 6. ταῦτα ἔδοξε (aor. of δοκεῖ) τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τε καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἔπεμψαν ἀγγέλους παρὰ βασιλέα. 7. Κῦρος ἔμεινεν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας ἐν Κολοσσαῖς. 8. Κῦρος ἐτίμησε Κλέαρχον πολλά. 9. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐνίκησαν τοὺς Πέρσας καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν. 10. εἰάν τις ἄλλα λέγειν βούληται, λεξάτω.

1. Clearchus collected an army with (ἀπὸ) the money which Cyrus sent him. 2. Themistoclēs persuaded (aor. stem πεισα-) the Athenians to send him with ships against the barbarians. 3. After (μετά w. acc.) the war of the Athenians and the Spartans, the Lacedaemonians (Λακεδαιμόνιοι) were-masters-of (κρατέω, aor.-stem κρατησα-) all the Greeks. 4. Cimon freed the Greek cities in Asia from the yoke of the Persians. 5. The soldiers, having heard these things, were obeying Clearchus.

---

## LESSON LIV. .

### *The First Aorist Middle.*

Grammar: §§ 316 second column, 327 second column.

**295.** THE formation of the first aorist-stem has been fully described in the previous lesson. By adding the proper middle endings, all the forms of the middle aorist are produced.

## SYNOPSIS OF FIRST AORIST MIDDLE OF λύω, μετα-πέμπομαι, φαίνω.

	ΑΟΡ.-STEM λύσα-	ΑΟΡ.-STEM μετα-πεμψα-	ΑΟΡ.-STEM φηνα-
Ind.	ἐλύσάμην	μετ-επεμψάμην	ἐφηνάμην
Sub.	λύσωμαι	μετα-πέμψωμαι	φήνωμαι
Opt.	λύσαίμην	μετα-πεμψαίμην	φηνάίμην
Imv.	λύσαι (483 a)	μετά-πεμψαι	φῆναι
Inf.	λύσασθαι	μετα-πέμψασθαι	φήνασθαι
Ptc.	λύσάμενος	μετα-πεμψάμενος	φηνάμενος

## INFLECTION OF FIRST AOR. INDIC. MIDDLE OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

Sing. 1	ἐλύσάμην	μετ-επεμψάμην	ἐφηνάμην
2	ἐλύσω (383, 4)	μετ-επέμψω	ἐφήνω
3	ἐλύσατο	μετ-επέμψατο	ἐφήνατο
Dual 2	ἐλύσασθον	μετ-επέμψασθον	ἐφήνασθον
3	ἐλύσασθην	μετ-επεμψάσθην	ἐφηνάσθην
Plu. 1	ἐλύσάμεθα	μετ-επεμψάμεθα	ἐφηνάμεθα
2	ἐλύσασθε	μετ-επέμψασθε	ἐφήνασθε
3	ἐλύσαντο	μετ-επέμψαντο	ἐφήναντο

Write out the synopsis of the First Aor. Middle (adding the inflection of the indicative) of the verbs the aorist-stems of which are given in § 292 of the last lesson.

## 296. VOCABULARY.

ἀπο-φαίνω

*show forth*

ἀπο-φαίνεσθαι γνώμην

*declare one's opinion*

Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ἡ

*Babylon*

Δελφοί

*Delphi, seat of world-famed  
oracle of Apollo on Mt.  
Parnassus*

κρατήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ	<i>mixing-bowl</i> , in which wine used at meals was mingled with from three to five parts of water
Κροῖσος	<i>Croesus</i> , King of Lydia
Λυδία	<i>Lydia</i> , division in western part of Asia Minor
ὅσος 3	<i>as great as</i> , pl. <i>as many as</i>
πρεσβύτερος, πρεσβύτατος	<i>older, oldest</i> ; the positive πρέσβυς chiefly as subst., <i>old man, ambassador</i>
πρόγονος	<i>progenitor, ancestor</i>
σπονδὰς ποιῆσθαι	<i>conclude a truce</i>

## 297. EXERCISE.

1. μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνεῖται Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας. τούτων οὖν τῶν πυλῶν ἕνεκα Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετ-ε-πέμψα-το ἵνα πέμψε-ιε (484) ὀπλίτας ἔσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν. 2. Τότε ἀπ-ε-κρίνα-το Κλέαρχος, ποιῶμαι τὰς σπονδὰς· οὕτως οὖν ἀπο-κρινά-μενος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους ἄγειν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 3. τὴν φιλίαν πάντων ἐκτησά-μεθα, πάντας εὖ ποιῶντες. 4. ταῦτα ἀκούσα-ντες βουλευσό-μεθα. 5. ἐν Θαψάκῳ (Thapsacus) ἔμεινα-ν πέντε ἡμέρας, καὶ Κῦρος μετα-πεμψά-μενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἔλεξε-ν αὐτοῖς ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς

{ ἐστὶ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἐπὶ μέγαν βασιλέα.  
εἶη

1. After this Cyrus said, Do you, O Clearchus, first declare your opinion, for you are the oldest of the generals. 2. Our ancestors acquired the liberty which we enjoy (χράομαι). 3. As-many-as Cyrus made his friends (made-for-himself friends), these he always used-to-treat well. 4. The Greeks thus made

answer, but Clearchus was-their-spokesman (aor. of λέγω). 5. Croesus, the King of Lydia, sent to (εἰς) Delphi two mixing-bowls, one (τὸν μὲν) of gold (χρυσοῦν) the other (τὸν δὲ) of silver.

---

## LESSON LV.

*The Second Aorist System.—Synopsis and Inflection of the Common Form, in the Active Voice.*

Grammar : §§ 435, 320 first column.

**298.** WITH this lesson is commenced the study of the Second Aorist System, in the common and -μ forms. The difference between them is the same as between the -ω and the -μ conjugation in the present system: the one employs, the other dispenses with, a variable vowel at the end of the stem.

The terms First Aorist and Second Aorist designate, not different tenses, but different ways of forming the same tense. One may compare the formation, in English, of the past (aorist) tense, in regular and irregular verbs. "I walked" is as plainly a past, or aorist, tense as "I brought"; the difference is in the formation.

It naturally follows that if a verb has a First Aorist it will lack the second, and *vice versa*. Having one, it has no use for the other. As well might a verb be both regular and irregular in English.

The Second Aorist is an older and a simpler formation than the First Aorist. It belongs to a small number of primitive verbs which are in very common use. Hence Second Aorist forms occur with

great frequency, so that we can hardly read half-a-dozen lines of ordinary Greek without meeting them.

The Second Aorist has a special importance, because in it the theme of the verb appears in its simplest form. Logically, therefore, it would be the natural starting-point at which to begin the study of the verb. The other longer, derived tense-stems would naturally follow. The reason why such an order is not wise in practice is that comparatively few verbs have a Second Aorist.

What has been said in Lesson LIII (§ 290) respecting the signification of the First Aorist applies in every respect to the Second Aorist, and may be repeated here, viz., that past time is necessarily implied by it only in that mode which has the augment, namely in the Indicative. The other modes refer to a simple, single act, the time of which is made clear by the connection.

**299.** The synopsis and inflection of the Second Aorist, in both active and middle voices, are essentially the same as in the present system.

Herewith are given the synopses of three common Second Aorists:

	ἔλιπον (λιπ-) <i>I left</i> 2 AOR.-STEM λιπ <sup>ο</sup>  ε-	ἦλθον (ελθ-) <i>I came</i> 2 AOR.-STEM ελθ <sup>ο</sup>  ε-	εἶδον (ιδ-) <i>I saw</i> 2 AOR.-STEM ιδ <sup>ο</sup>  ε-
Ind.	ἔλιπον	ἦλθον	εἶδον
Sub.	λίπω	έλθω	ἴδω
Opt.	λίποιμι	έλθοιμι	ἴδοιμι
Imv.	λίπε	έλθέ (387 b)	ἴδε (387 b)
Inf.	λιπεῖν (389 a)	ελθεῖν (389 a)	ιδεῖν (389 a)
Ptc.	λιπών, -οῦσα, -όν (389 a)	ελθών, -οῦσα, -όν (389 a)	ιδών, -οῦσα, -όν (389 a)

**300. RULE 1.**—The following five forms, εἶπέ, ἔλθέ, εὐρέ, λαβέ, ἰδέ, are oxytone in the 2d sing. 2 aor. impv. act.

**301. RULE 2.**—Το τυγχάνω *I happen*, λανθάνω *I escape notice*, and φθάνω *I anticipate*, a participle is often joined which supplies an idea more important than that of the verb. Such a participle is called supplementary, and may sometimes be translated by a verb, while the verb becomes an adverbial modifier: ἔτυχε γράφων *he was writing, as it happened*, lit. *he happened writing*; ἔλαθεν ἔλθών *he came secretly*, lit. *he escaped notice having come*.

### 302. VOCABULARY.

βάλλω (βαλ-)	2 aor. ἔβαλον	
ἐκ-βάλλω		<i>cast out, often drive into exile</i>
λαμβάνω (λαβ-)	2 aor. ἔλαβον	
λανθάνω (λαθ-)	2 aor. ἔλαθον	<i>escape notice</i>
λείπω (λιπ-)	2 aor. ἔλιπον	<i>leave</i>
ἀπο-λείπω		<i>desert</i>
μανθάνω (μαθ-)	2 aor. ἔμαθον	
τυγχάνω (τυχ-)	2 aor. ἔτυχον	<i>happen, chance</i>
εἶδον (ιδ-)	Second Aorists associated in meaning, not connected in root, with the presents: ὁράω, λέγω or φημί, ἔρχομαι	<i>I saw</i>
εἶπον (ειπ-)		<i>I said</i>
ἦλθον (ελθ-)		<i>I came</i>
Βοιωτία	<i>Boeotia, interior division of Greece</i>	
δείπνον	<i>evening-meal, supper, dinner</i>	
ἵππεύς, ἑως, ὁ	<i>horseman</i>	
Καῖσαρ, -αρος	<i>Cæsar</i>	
Μίλητος ἡ	<i>Milētus, important Greek city on west coast of Asia Minor</i>	
Μιλήσιος	<i>Milesian, inhabitant of Miletus</i>	
παίζω (παιδ-)	<i>play</i>	
περί-πατος	<i>stroll, promenade (peripatetic)</i>	

## 303. EXERCISE.

1. Κῦρος ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον, λαβόντα ὅτι πλείστους, ἐλθεῖν (or ἔρχεσθαι). 2. λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην, (198) ὥς (as) φίλον, ἦλθεν. 3. μαθόντες ταῦτα ἀπ-ἤλαινον. 4. ταῦτα εἰπόντες ἀπ-έλιπον Κῦρον. 5. ἐξ-έβαλε τοὺς Μιλησίους ἐκ Μιλήτου, τῆς πατρίδος. 6. ἔτυχεν ἀπ-ὼν καὶ οὐκ ἤκουσεν (ἀκούω) ἀ ἐλέγετο (quae dicebantur). 7. ἐλθόντες καὶ ἰδόντες ἀπ-ἦλθον. 8. μετὰ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, ἦσαν γὰρ πατρώιοι φίλοι, ὁ μὲν ἐκ Βοιωτίας ὁ δὲ ἐξ Ἀθηνῶν. 9. προσ-ελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἐζήτησε (ζητέω) Πρόξενον. 10. ἐπεὶ (when) δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν· αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε εἶπεν.

1. I came, having taken three hundred hoplites. 2. I happen to have taken (lit. having taken) many soldiers. 3. I came as-quickly-as-possible<sup>1</sup> with (having) forty horsemen, for Cyrus sent for me. 4. Some of the Greeks deserted Cyrus in the upward-march. 5. I came, I saw, I conquered, so wrote Cæsar in his immortal letter after (μετά w. acc.) the battle of (in) Pharsalia (Φάρσαλος). 6. Children learn (while) playing. 7. Throw as many stones as possible down-from (κατά w. gen.) the rock.

## LESSON LVI.

*Second Aorist System, continued.—Synopsis and Inflection of the Common Form, in the Middle Voice.*

Grammar: §§ 320 second column.

304. HEREWITH are given the synopses of three common Second Aorists in the middle voice:

<sup>1</sup> ὥς τάχιστα.

	ἐλιπόμην <i>I left be-</i> <i>hind me (indir. m.)</i> 2 AOR.-STEM λιπο ε-	ᾔσθόμην <i>I perceived</i> 2 AOR.-STEM αισθ ε-	ἦκόμην <i>I came</i> 2 AOR.-STEM ἰκο ε-
Ind.	ἐλιπόμην	ᾔσθόμην	ἦκόμην
Sub.	λίπωμαι	αἰσθώμαι	ἰκώμαι
Opt.	λιπόμην	αἰσθοίμην	ἰκοίμην
Imv.	λιποῦ (387 a)	αἰσθοῦ	ἰκοῦ
Inf.	λιπέσθαι (389 a)	αἰσθέσθαι	ἰκέσθαι
Ptc.	λιπόμενος	αἰσθόμενος	ἰκόμενος

## 305. VOCABULARY.

αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-)	2 a. ᾔσθόμην <i>perceive (obj. in gen.)</i>
γίγνομαι (γεν-)	2 a. ἐγενόμην <i>come to be, become</i>
ἔρχομαι (ερχ-, ελθ-)	2 a. ἦλθον
δι-έρχομαι	<i>come or go through</i>
παρ-έρχομαι	<i>pass along, pass by</i>
συν-έρχομαι	<i>come together</i>
θνήσκω (θνα-, θαν-)	2 a. ἔθανον <i>die</i>
ἀπο-θνήσκω (more common than preceding)	<i>die</i>
ἰκνέομαι (ικ-)	2 a. ἦκόμην <i>come</i>
ἀφ-ικνέομαι (more common than preceding)	<i>arrive</i>
πάσχω (παθ-)	2 a. ἔπαθον <i>suffer, be recipient of good or bad treatment</i>
εὖ πάσχειν	<i>be well treated</i>
κακῶς πάσχειν	<i>be badly treated</i>
πολλὰ πάσχειν	<i>suffer much</i>
πάσχειν ὑπό τινος	<i>be treated by any one</i>
ἀκολουθεῖν (ἀκολουθε-)	<i>follow (governs dat.)</i>
Ἀνδρέας	<i>Andrew</i>
ἀπιστέω (απιστε-)	<i>distrust (governs dat.)</i>
Ἀριαῖος	<i>Ariaeus, commander of barbarians under Cyrus</i>
δικαίως (δίκαιος 3, just)	<i>justly</i>



ἐπιβουλή	plot
εὐαγγέλιον	gospel, lit. good-tidings
περι-μένω (μεν-)	wait for
πολλάκις	often
Σίμων, -ωνος	Simon
φθάνω (φθα-)	anticipate

## 306. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ Ἕλληνες φθάνουσι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀφ-ικόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν. 2. Μιλτιάδης ἀπο-θνήσκων ἐλίπετο υἱὸν ἄξιον ἑαυτοῦ, τὸν Κίμωνα. 3. Τισσαφέρνης ἤσθετο τῆς Κύρου ἐπιβουλής. ἡ Κύρου ἐπιβουλή οὐκ ἔλαθε Τισσαφέρνην. 4. δι-ελθόντες τούτους τοὺς σταθμούς, ἀφ-ίκοντο πρὸς τεῖχος τι μέγα καὶ ὑψηλόν, καὶ παρ-ῆλθον εἰσω αὐτοῦ (757)· τὸ δὲ μῆκος τοῦ τείχους ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι. 5. ἐν ᾧ οἱ Ἕλληνες περι-έμενον Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον, ὑποψίαί ἐγίνοντο. 6. Κλέαρχος οὖν, φοβούμενος μὴ πόλεμος ἐξ αὐτῶν γένηται (887), ἀφ-ικόμενος πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην λέγει τάδε. 7. αἰσθόμενος τούτων τῶν ὑποψιῶν καὶ ἰδὼν πολλάκις ἀνθρώπους—βουλομένους μὲν φίλους εἶναι, γενομένους δὲ ὑποψιῶν ἔνεκα ἐχθρούς—ἦλθον πρὸς σε καὶ λέγω σοι ὅτι οὐ δικαίως ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖς. 8. ἐλθὲ οὖν, Τισσαφέρνης ἀπ-εκρίνατο, παρ' ἐμέ, λαβὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς καὶ λέξω τοὺς λέγοντας ὅτι ἐπι-βουλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ.

1. We suffered many things at-the-hands of (ὑπό) the barbarians. 2. I received many favors (πολλὰ εὖ πάσχειν) at the hands of my friends. 3. No one of the Greeks suffered any thing (οὐδέν) in this battle. 4. These things took-place (ἐγένετο) in the night (759). 5. On the following day (τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ) the same things happened. 6. The king did not perceive the plot against him.

**307. CONNECTED PASSAGE FOR TRANSLATION.**

Εὐαγγέλιον κατὰ Ἰωάννην.

1 : vv. 38–40. Ἰησοῦς ἰδὼν δύο Ἰωάννου μαθητὰς ἀκολουθοῦντας αὐτῷ λέγει αὐτοῖς· τί ζητεῖτε ; οἱ δὲ εἶπον αὐτῷ· διδάσκαλε, ποῦ μένεις ; λέγει αὐτοῖς, ἔλθετε καὶ ἴδετε· ἦλθον οὖν καὶ εἶδον ποῦ μένει καὶ παρ' αὐτῷ ἔμεινα-ν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην· ἦν γὰρ ὡς (about) δεκάτη ὥρᾱ. ἦν δὲ Ἀνδρέας, ὁ ἀδελφὸς Σίμωνος Πέτρου, εἰς τῶν δύο ἀκολουθησά-ντων αὐτῷ.

---

LESSON LVII.

*Second Aorist System, continued.—Synopsis and Inflection of Two Aorists of the -μι Form, ἔστην and ἔβην, in the Active Voice.—Circumstantial Participles, in their Ordinary and in their Absolute Use.*

Grammar: §§ 439, 440 a ; 335 first column.

**308.** THE formation of Second Aorists of the -μι form is even simpler than that of the common form. The theme of the verb, unchanged, is the aorist-stem.

Most Second Aorists of the -μι form come from presents in -μι, and in this case the inflection corresponds very closely to that of their present system (cf. 335 with 331). But occasionally a verb in -ω has a Second Aorist of the -μι form. Thus, βαίνω (βα-) makes the Second Aorist ἔβην.

REMARK.—βαίνω and ἵστημι possess both a First and a Second Aorist. By the side of ἔστην and ἔβην are found

**ἔστησα** and **ἔβησα**. In these and similar cases there is a difference in meaning between the two aorists: the First Aorist being transitive; the Second Aorist, intransitive. Thus:

**ἔστησα** *I set*, **ἔβησα** *I caused to go*  
**ἔστην** *I stood*, **ἔβην** *I went*

One might perhaps compare in English the two past tenses (aorists) *hung* and *hanged* (took life by hanging), from the present *hang*.

**309.** SYNOPSIS OF 2 AOR. ACT. (-μ FORM) OF **ἵστημι** (στα-) AND **βαίνο** (βα-).

	<b>ἔστην</b> <i>I stood</i> 2 AOR.-STEM στα-	<b>ἔβην</b> <i>I went</i> 2 AOR.-STEM βα-
Ind.	<b>ἔστην</b>	<b>ἔβην</b>
Sub.	<b>στέ</b>	<b>βέ</b>
Opt.	<b>σταίην</b>	<b>βαίην</b>
Imv.	<b>στήθι</b>	<b>βήθι</b>
Inf.	<b>σθῆναι</b>	<b>βῆναι</b>
Ptc.	<b>στᾶς</b>	<b>βάς</b>

**310.** Now that the aorist and future tenses have been learned, it will appear with what fondness the Greek language employs participles instead of dependent clauses. Such participles, called circumstantial, may express *time*, *cause*, *condition*, *concession*, *purpose* (§ 251).

The participle, as its name (Lat. *parti-cipium*) implies, combines in itself two functions: that of adjective and verb. As an adjective, it attaches itself to a noun, commonly the subject of the sentence; in its function as a verb, it is a modifier of the predicate; e. g. **Κῦρος, λαβὼν τριακοσίους ἱππέας τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀνέβη παρὰ τὸν πατέρα** *Cyrus, having taken three hundred Greek hoplites, went up to his*

*father.* In this sentence the construction, or case, of λαβών depends wholly upon the subject Κῦρος; as an adjective, it belongs wholly to that subject. But in its verbal character, as far as it denotes any relation of time, it modifies the predicate.

**311.** Where the sentence contains a word with which the circumstantial participle can agree, no other rule for it is needed than the ordinary rule for the agreement of adjectives. When, however, the word with which it would agree is not found in the sentence, there arises the construction of the Genitive Absolute, corresponding in general to the Ablative Absolute in Latin, and the Nominative Independent in English :

**312.** The circumstantial participle may be joined with a genitive not immediately depending on any word in the sentence. The two are then said to be in the genitive absolute: ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος *he ascended the mountains, no one hindering.* [970]

### 313. VOCABULARY.

ἄμπελος ἥ	<i>vine</i>
ἀν-ίστημι	<i>make rise up, intrans. rise</i>
ἀνα-βαίνω	<i>go up</i>
ἀπο-βαίνω	<i>go away, depart</i>
ἀσθενέω	<i>be sick</i>
ἀσθενής 2	<i>sick</i>
καθ-ίστημι	<i>establish, lit. set down; intrans. become established</i>
παντοῖος	<i>of every sort</i>
συν-έρχομαι	<i>come together</i>
τριᾱκόσιοι	<i>three hundred</i>

## 314. EXERCISE.

1. Κῦρος οὖν ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνὰς ἐν αἷς οἱ Κίλικες ἐ-φύλαττον. 2. ἐντεῦθεν κατ-έβαινε εἰς πεδῖον μέγα καὶ καλόν, πλήρες παντοίων δένδρων καὶ ἀμπέλων. 3. κατα-βὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε (aor. from ἐλαύνω, ελα-) σταθμοὺς τέτταρας εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίᾳς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 4. Δαρεῖος, βασιλεὺς τῶν Περσῶν, ἀσθενήσας μετ-επέμψατο Κῦρον. 5. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος ἀν-έβη πρὸς τὸν πατέρα, λαβὼν τριᾶκοσίους ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 6. ἀπο-θανόντος δὲ Δαρείου, Ἀρταξέρξης, ὁ πρεσβύτερος υἱός, κατ-έστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν. 7. ἐὰν δια-βῇτε τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων, Κῦρος ὑμῖν ἀπο-δώσει (will reward). 8. πάντων τῶν λοχαγῶν συν-ελθόντων, Ξενοφῶν ἀνα-στὰς ἔλεξε τάδε.

1. Having taken as many hoplites as possible, I went up on the mountain. 2. Having come and seen, he departed. 3. Let us descend (aor. subj.) from the mountain into the plain. 4. Having left behind (κατα-λείπω) the village at-the-foot-of (ὑπό w. dat.) the mountain, we crossed the plain as quickly as possible. 5. It is not possible (οὐκ ἔστι) to cross (aor. infin.) these rivers, if-any-one (εἴ τις) hinders.

## LESSON LVIII.

*Second Aorist System of the -μι Form, continued.—Synopsis and Inflection of the Second Aorist System of δίδωμι in the Active and Middle Voice, and of γινώσκω in the Active Voice.—Supplementary Participle.*

Grammar: §§ 443 a, b, c, d, 444, 445, 834.

**315.** THE Second Aorist of δίδωμι is not found in the singular of the Indicative Active. Instead of it, a peculiar First Aorist in -κα (ἔδωκα, ἔδωκας, ἔδωκε) is used.

γινώσκω (γνο-), though an -ω verb, has its Second Aorist in the -μι form.

**316.** SYNOPSIS OF SECOND AORISTS OF δίδωμι (δο-) AND γινώσκω (γνο-).

	ἔδωκα <i>I gave</i> 1 AOR.-STEM δωκα- 2 AOR.-STEM δο-	ἔδομην <i>I gave (of my own)</i> 2 AOR.-STEM δο-	ἔγνων <i>I knew</i> 2. AOR.-STEM γνο-
Ind.	ἔδωκα } ἔδοτον }	ἔδομην	ἔγνων
Sub.	δῶ	δῶμαι	γνῶ
Opt.	δοίην	δοίμην	γνοίην
Imv.	δος (443 c)	δοῦ	γνῶθι
Inf.	δοῦναι (443 c)	δόσθαι	γνῶναι
Ptc.	δούς, δοῖσα, δόν	δόμενος, -η, -ον	γνούς, γνοῖσα, γνόν

**317.** There are certain uses of the participle, in its verbal function as a modifier of the predicate, to which the name supplemental is given. The term supplementary is intended to suggest the closeness of

the connection between the participle and the verb to which it clings (see 980-984). The supplementary participle is especially frequent in four connections :

**318. RULE 1.**—With verbs of beginning, ceasing, continuing, appearing.

**319. RULE 2.**—With verbs of knowing and perceiving.

**320. RULE 3.**—With verbs of enduring and feeling.

**321. RULE 4.**—With *λαμβάνω*, *τυγχάνω*, *φθάνω*.

### 322. VOCABULARY.

<i>ἀν-έκδοτος</i> 2	<i>inedited, unpublished (anecdote)</i>
<i>ἄρτος</i>	<i>loaf of bread, bread</i>
<i>Ἀρχιμανδρίτης</i>	<i>Archimandrite, honorary title of Greek preaching monks</i>
<i>γραφή</i>	<i>writing, Scripture</i>
<i>διδασχῆ</i>	<i>teaching, doctrine</i>
<i>δώδεκα</i>	<i>twelve</i>
<i>ἐκ-δίδωμι (δο-)</i>	<i>edit, lit. give out</i>
<i>Ἐριφύλη</i>	<i>Eriphylé, induced by a golden necklace to betray her husband, Amphiarāus</i>
<i>ἡδομαι (ἡδ-)</i>	<i>be glad, rejoice</i>
<i>κλάω (κλα-)</i>	<i>break</i>
<i>Κωνσταντινούπολις ἡ</i>	<i>Constantinople</i>
<i>Μητροπολίτης</i>	<i>Metropolitan, title of bishops of certain cities of special importance (μητρόπολις, lit. mother-city)</i>
<i>Νικομήδεια</i>	<i>Nicomedia, city in Bithynia</i>
<i>παρα-λαμβάνω (λαβ-)</i>	<i>receive from</i>
<i>σήμερον</i>	<i>to-day</i>

συμ-βουλεύω (βουλευ-)	<i>give counsel</i>
συμ-βουλεύομαι (indir. m.)	<i>consult with</i>
συ-στρατεύομαι (59)	<i>make an expedition with</i>
τελευταῖος 3	<i>last, final</i>
χρῦσός	<i>gold</i>

## 323. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι παρ-έδοσαν τὰς ναῦς, πλὴν δώδεκα, τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις. 2. λέγουσιν Ἐριφύλην διὰ τὸν χρῦσὸν τὸν ἄνδρα (husband) προ-δοῦναι. 3. Ἰησοῦς λέγει τοῖς μαθηταῖς· Πόσους ἄρτους ἔχετε; ὑπ-άγετε (go), ἴδετε. καὶ γνόντες λέγουσι· Πέντε, καὶ δύο ἰχθύας. 4. τὸν καθ' ἡμέραν (day by day) ἄρτον δὸς ἡμῖν σήμερον. 5. ἐλθέτω ἡ βασιλείᾳ σου, ὦ θεός. 6. παρ-έδωκα ὑμῖν δ καὶ ἐγὼ παρ-έλαβον. 7. ὁ Κύριος ἡμῶν, Ἰησοῦς Χριστός, τῇ νυκτὶ ἐν ᾗ προ-εδίδото, ἔλαβεν ἄρτον καὶ ἔκλασεν καὶ εἶπεν· τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ σῶμά μου. 8. Κύρος ἔγνω τὴν φιλήν Τισσαφέρνους οὔσαν (pres. ptc. of εἰμί) ψευδῇ. 9. ἤδομαι ἀκούων σου (from you) σοφοὺς λόγους. 10. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο (παύομαι) λέγων.

1. Did you read the Teaching of the Apostles? 2. The Archimandrite, Philotheos Bryennios, Metropolitan of Nicomedia, published this inedited writing ten years ago (πρὸ δέκα ἐτῶν). 3. Bryennios was born (2 aor. of γίγνομαι, γεν-) at Constantinople, of (ἐκ) poor parents, sixty years ago (πρὸ ἑξήκοντα ἐτῶν). 4. Did you happen to hear this (lit. happen having heard)? 5. Proxenus was one of-those-making-the-expedition-with Cyrus (τῶν συστρατευομένων Κύρω), and he wished Xenophon, his guest-friend, to accompany (ἔπομαι) him. 6. Xenophon, having read the letter of Proxenus, shows it to Socrates and consults with him.



## LESSON LIX.

*Second Aorist System of the -μ Form, concluded:  
Synopsis and Inflection of the Second Aorist System of τίθημι and ἵημι in the Active and Middle Voices.*

Grammar: §§ 432, 443 a, b, c, d; 333, 476 (last half).

**324.** PERHAPS the two most important roots in the Greek language, from the innumerable compounds and derivatives into which they enter, are *θε-* and *ἑ-*, the themes of *τίθημι I place* and *ἵημι I send*. This lesson is therefore devoted to the Second Aorist System of these verbs.

What was said in § 312 respecting the peculiar 1 aor. in *-κα* (used only in the sing. of the indic. act.) applies to *τίθημι* and *ἵημι* as well as to *δίδωμι*.

**325. SYNOPSIS OF SECOND AORIST SYSTEM OF τίθημι AND ἵημι.**

	2 AOR.-STEM <i>θε-</i>		2 AOR.-STEM <i>ἑ-</i>	
Ind.	{ τίθηκα, -ας, -ε τίθετον	τίθεμην	{ ἵκα, -ας, -ε ἵετον <sup>1</sup>	ἵεμην <sup>1</sup>
Sub.	θῶ	θῶμαι	ῶ	ῶμαι
Opt.	θείην	θείμην	είην	είμην
Imv.	θέε (443 b)	θοῦ	ἕε (443 b)	οῦ
Inf.	θεῖναι (443 c)	θέσθαι	εῖναι (443 c)	ἕσθαι
Ptc.	θείς, θείσα, θέν	θέμενος	είς, εῖσα, έν	ἕμενος

**326. VOCABULARY.**

ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ *contest, game*  
ἀνα-τίθημι *dedicate*

<sup>1</sup> The 2 aor.-stem *ἑ-* is changed by the (syllabic) augment (359 a) into *εἑ-*.

ἀνατολή	east, Orient, lit. rising (of sun)
Ἀρκάς, -άδος, ὁ	Arcadian
ἀσπάζομαι	greet
ἀφ-ίημι	send away, dismiss
γνώμη	opinion
Ἐφέσιος 3	Ephesian
κατα-τίθημι	put down, deposit
μετὰ τὸ Πάσχα	after Easter
πανταχοῦ	everywhere
Πέλται	Peltae, city in Asia Minor
προσ-τίθημι	put to, add to; midd. accede to
πωλέω	sell (biblio-pole)
συν-τίθημι	put together; midd. agree on, conclude
φιλικῶς	in a friendly manner
χρήσιμος 3	useful
Χριστιανός	Christian

## 327. EXERCISE.

1. οἱ Ἐφέσιοι πολιορκούμενοι ἀν-έθεσαν τὴν πόλιν Ἀρτέμιδι. 2. οὐ δεῖ βασιλέα ἀφ-εῖναι τοὺς ἐπ' αὐτὸν στρατευσαμένους. 3. τὴν ἡμετέραν φιλήαν κατ-εθέμεθα παρὰ τοῖς θεοῖς. 4. μὴ ἐπι-θώμεθα τοῖς πολεμίοις. 5. ἰώμεθα ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. 6. ἐὰν παραδῶμεν τὰ ὄπλα τοῖς Πέρσαις, τί γενησόμεθα (fut. of γίγνομαι); 7. Λυκοῦργον, τὸν θέντα νόμους Λακεδαιμονίοις, μάλιστα θαυμάζω. 8. Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκάς, ἐν ᾧ (while) ἔμεινεν ἐν Πέλταις, ἀγῶνα ἔθηκεν.

9. τῶν πόνων πωλοῦσιν ἡμῖν πάντα τὰγαθ' οἱ θεοί.

10. τὸ Γνώθι Σαυτὸν πανταχοῦ 'στι<sup>1</sup> χρήσιμον.

1. The Greeks and the barbarians concluded friendship. 2. The king dismissed the Greeks in a friendly manner. 3. The other generals acceded to

<sup>1</sup> 'στι = ἐστι.

the opinion of Clearchus. 4. In the days after Easter, Christians in the East greet one-another (*ἀλλήλους*) saying: Brethren, Christ has risen! 5. Xenophon dedicated this spot (*τόπος*) to Apollo and the Muses.

### 328. CONNECTED PASSAGE FOR TRANSLATION.

[From the Septuagint.]

Ἐκ τοῦ δευτέρου βιβλίου Μωϋσοῦ, τῆς Ἑξόδου.

#### VOCABULARY FOR THE FOLLOWING PASSAGE.

ἄβρᾱ	nurse
ἀνα-λαμβάνω	take up
ἀν-οίγνυμι	open
ἀστέιος (ἄστν)	bright, lively
ἀσφαλτόπισσα	pitch (lit. asphalt-pitch)
Ἑβραῖος 3	Hebrew
ἔλος, -ους, τό	marsh
ἕξοδος, ἡ	going out; Exodus
θίβη	ark (Hebrew word)
κατα-σκοπεύω	watch closely
κατα-χρίω	smear over
κλαίω	weep
Λευί (indeclinable)	Levi (Hebrew word)
λούω	wash
μακρόθεν	from afar off
παιδίον	child
παρα-πορεύομαι	proceed along by
Φαραώ (indeclinable)	Pharaoh, name of kings of Egypt

2 : vv. 2-6. καὶ μίᾱ τῶν θυγατέρων Λεὺλ ἔτεκεν<sup>1</sup> υἱὸν καὶ ἰδοῦσα ἀστέιον ὄντα ἔκρυψεν<sup>2</sup> αὐτὸν τρεῖς μῆνας. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἔτι κρύπτειν, ἔλαβεν ἡ

<sup>1</sup> 2 aor. of τίκτω (τεκ-).

<sup>2</sup> 1 aor. of κρύπτω (κρυβ-).

μήτηρ θίβην, καὶ κατ-έχρῖσεν<sup>1</sup> αὐτὴν ἀσφαλτοπίσση καὶ ἐν-έβαλε τὸ παιδίον εἰς αὐτήν, καὶ ἔθηκεν αὐτὸ εἰς τὸ ἔλος παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. καὶ κατ-εσκόπευεν ἡ ἀδελφὴ αὐτοῦ μακρόθεν, ἰδεῖν τί γενήσεται. κατέβη δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἡ θυγάτηρ Φαραὼ λούσασθαι<sup>2</sup> καὶ αἱ ἄβραι αὐτῆς παρ-επορεύοντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν· καὶ ἰδοῦσα τὴν θίβην ἀν-έλαβεν. ἀν-οἰξᾶσα<sup>3</sup> δὲ ὄρᾳ τὸ παιδίον κλαῖον<sup>4</sup> ἐν τῇ θίβῃ καὶ ἔφη· ἀπὸ τῶν παιδίων τῶν Ἑβραίων τοῦτό ἐστιν.

## LESSON LX.

### *Formation of the Present-Stem.—First Four Classes.*

Grammar: §§ 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400.

**329.** Four important tense-stems and tense-systems, viz., the present, future, first aorist, second aorist, have now been explained and learned.

It is next necessary to examine the relation between the *theme* and the *present-stem*. The theme is the fundamental element upon which all the tense-stems are formed. It appears, in its simplest form, in the second aorist. Comparatively few verbs possess, however, the second aorist. On the other hand, the starting-point of the verb, in all dictionaries and vocabularies, is the 1 singular present indicative, i. e., the *present-stem*. The present-stem is so related to the theme that the various additions and changes by

<sup>1</sup> 1 aor. of χρίω (χρι-).

<sup>2</sup> 1 aor. of λούω (λου-).

<sup>3</sup> 1 aor. of οἰγνύμι (οιγ-).

<sup>4</sup> Pres. ptc. ntr. nom. sing of κλαίω.

which it is formed from it are indicated by seven suggestive names. These names of the seven classes of present-stems are as follows: I. Variable Vowel Class; II. Strong-Vowel Class; III. Tau Class; IV. Iota Class; V. Nu Class; VI. Inceptive or *-σκω* Class; VII. Root Class.

**REMARK.**—The ancient Greeks made no use of any such classification of present-stems. Modern scholars have derived this classification from the learned Brahmins of India, who applied it to the Sanskrit verb. The Sanskrit, the language in which the ancient sacred religious poetry of India is written, is an older sister of the Greek, and the structure of the two languages is so similar that great light has been thrown upon the Greek through the study of the Sanskrit. The school-boy of the nineteenth century may have, after six months' study, more scientific knowledge of the Greek language than the most learned Greek grammarians of Alexandria ever attained; and the American school-boy is indebted, for part of the light with which he pursues his study, to learned Brahmins of India.

**330. I. VARIABLE VOWEL CLASS.**—The present-stem consists of the theme, with the addition of the variable vowel *ο*/. This large class includes most vowel-verbs and almost all contract-verbs:

βουλεύω	(βουλευ-)	<i>plan</i>
κελεύω	(κελευ-)	<i>command</i>
κινδυνεύω	(κινδυνευ-)	<i>incur danger</i>
λύω	(λυ-)	<i>loose</i>
ποιέω	(ποιε-)	<i>make</i>

**331. II. STRONG-VOWEL CLASS.**—In the present-stem the theme-vowel *α*, *ι*, *υ* takes the *strong* form *η*, *ει*, *ευ* beside adding *ο*/.:

λείπω	(λιπ-)	<i>leave</i>
φεύγω	(φυγ-)	<i>flee</i>

**332. III. ΤΑΥ CLASS.**—The present-stem is formed by adding the suffix τ<sup>ο</sup> to the theme. This class includes labial themes only:

κρύπτω (κρυβ-) *hide*

**333. IV. ΙΟΤΑ CLASS.**—The present-stem is formed by adding the suffix ι<sup>ο</sup> to the theme. The ι so unites with the preceding letter as to occasion various sound changes; for these, see the grammar:

- |     |         |           |                 |
|-----|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| (a) | φυλάσσω | (φυλακ-)  | <i>guard</i>    |
| (b) | ἀθροίζω | (αθροιδ-) | <i>assemble</i> |
|     | νομίζω  | (νομιδ-)  | <i>think</i>    |
| (c) | ἀγγέλλω | (αγγελ-)  | <i>announce</i> |
|     | βάλλω   | (βαλ-)    | <i>throw</i>    |
| (d) | κτείνω  | (κτεν-)   | <i>kill</i>     |
|     | φαίνω   | (φαν-)    | <i>show</i>     |

### 334. EXERCISE.

Write out the first person singular and the first person plural of the present, imperfect, future, and aorist, indicative of each of the above verbs in the active and middle voices.

Note that the futures of λείπω and φεύγω are from the strengthened themes λειπ- and φευγ-; that the future of φεύγω only occurs in the middle voice; that λείπω, φεύγω, βάλλω form a second, and consequently no first, aorist.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. βούλευε, βουλεύεσθαι, βουλεύσειν, βουλεύσουσι, ἐβούλευσαν, βουλευσάντων.
2. κελευόντων, ἐκελεύσαμεν.
3. ποιῶμεν, ποιούμεν, ἐποιούμεν, ἐποιήσαμεν.
4. ἔλιπον, λίπε, λείπε, ἔλειπε.
5. κρύψουσι, ἔκρυψαν.

6. φυλάξουσι, ἐφυλάξαμεν, ἐφυλάξαντο. 7. νομιοῦμεν  
(for νομίσομεν, cf. 425) ἐνομίσατε. 8. ἀγγελοῦμεν,  
ἡγγείλαμεν, ἡγγέλλομεν. 9. ἀπο-κτενοῦσι, ἀπ-έκτειναν.  
10. φανοῦσι, φανοῦνται, ἔφηναν, ἐφήναντο.

## LESSON LXI.

*Formation of Present-Stem, concluded.—Last Three Classes.*

Grammar: §§ 402 and Rem, 403 a and b, 404, 405.

**335. V. NASAL OR NU CLASS.**—The present-stem is formed from the theme by adding a suffix containing *ν*.

- |                          |  |         |                   |
|--------------------------|--|---------|-------------------|
| (a) -ν <sup>ο</sup>  ,-  | φθάνω  | (φθα-)  | <i>anticipate</i> |
| (b) -αν <sup>ο</sup>  ,- | αἰσθάνομαι   | (αισθ)  | <i>perceive</i>   |
| (c) -αν <sup>ο</sup>  ,- | with inserted nasal (μ, ν, γ, according as π-, τ-, or κ mute precedes) |         |                   |
|                          | λαμβάνω  | (λαβ-)  | <i>take</i>       |
|                          | μανθάνω  | (μαθ-)  | <i>learn</i>      |
|                          | τυγχάνω  | (τυχ-)  | <i>happen</i>     |
| (d) -νε <sup>ο</sup>  ,- | ἰκνέομαι   | (ἰκ-)   | <i>come</i>       |
| (e) -νυ                  | δείκνυμι   | (δεικ-) | <i>show</i>       |

**336. VI. INCEPTIVE OR -σκω CLASS.**—The present-stem is formed from the theme by adding -σκ<sup>ο</sup>|,- or -ισκ<sup>ο</sup>|,-. The vowel before -σκω is usually made long.

γινγνώσκω (γνο-)

**337. VII. ROOT CLASS.**—The present-stem is the theme itself, with or without a reduplication.

φημί	(φα-)	say
ἵστημι	(στα-)	set (ἵστημι = σιστημι)
τίθημι	(θε-)	put

**338. MIXED CLASS.**—An eighth class is sometimes added to include tenses formed from different themes, associated only on account of similarity of meaning.

ἔρχομαι, 2 aor. ἦλθον (ερχ-, ελθ-) *come*

**339.** Sometimes the theme from which the different tenses are formed varies slightly.

Thus: αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-) makes its future αἰσθήσομαι as if from (αισθε-).

And βούλομαι (βουλ-) makes its future βουλήσομαι as if from (βουλε-).

And γίγνομαι 393 b (γεν-) makes its future γενήσομαι as if from (γενε-).

### 340. EXERCISE.

Write out the third person singular and the third person plural of the present, imperfect, future, and aorist indicative of each of the above verbs in the active and middle voices.

Note that φθάνω and φημί are to be written only in the active, αἰσθάνομαι, ἰκνέομαι, βούλομαι, and γίγνομαι only in the middle, voice. Note that the final vowel of the theme of φθάνω is not lengthened in the future and aorist. Note that λαμβάνω and τυγχάνω show the strong forms of the theme ληβ- and τευχ- in the future-stem; that μανθάνω shows the theme μαθε- in the future. Note that αἰσθάνομαι, λαμβάνω, μανθάνω, τυγχάνω, ἰκνέομαι, γίγνομαι, have the second aorist, and γιγνώσκω the second



aorist of the -μ form. Note, further, that the future of λαμβάνω, μανθάνω, τυγχάνω, γινώσκω, occurs only in the middle voice.

#### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἐφθάσαμεν, φθάσουσι. 2. ἤσθοντο, αἰσθησόμεθα.  
3. ἐλάβομεν, λήψομαι. 4. ἐτύχετε, τυχών. 5. ἐδείξατε, δειξάσθων. 6. ἔγνωσαν, γνούς. 7. ἔστησα, ἔστην, ἐστήσαντο. 8. γιγνόμεθα, ἐγενόμεθα. 9. ἐβουλόμεθα, ἐβουλόμην.

### LESSON LXII.

#### *Perfect Active Systems.*

Grammar: §§ 363, 364, 365, 367 (Reduplication); 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 453 (Suffixes and Modification of Theme); 455, 317, 321 (Inflection).

**341.** THE perfect tense in Greek is of much less frequent occurrence than the tense which bears the same name in Latin. The Latin perfect really comprehends under one name two tenses: the perfect proper (perfect with “have”); and the aorist (historical perfect). The Greek perfect is the perfect with “have.” The perfect system in Greek includes the perfect and pluperfect tenses, both being formed from the same stem.

There are two slightly different formations of the perfect active-stem, to which the names *First* and *Second* are given. They are best treated and studied side by side. The difference between them, as between the two aorists, is one of formation only, and, as a rule, if a verb has the perfect in one formation it lacks the other.

**342.** In general, the first perfect-stem is made by appending the suffix *-κα-*; the second perfect-stem by appending the suffix *-α-*, to the reduplicated theme. The references at the head of the lesson explain what is meant by the reduplicated theme.

**343.** The first perfect belongs especially to themes ending in a vowel; but includes some lingual and liquid themes.

The following modifications of the reduplicated theme are to be noticed :

(a) A vowel at the end of the theme is lengthened before *-κα*.

(b) Verbs of the second class have the strong form of the theme.

(c) Lingual-themes drop the lingual before *-κα*.

(d) Liquid-themes of one syllable change *ε* to *α*.

(e) In a few liquid-themes final *ν* is rejected.

E. g. *τετῖμῃκα-* from *τῖμάω* (*τῖμα-*)

*πέπεικα-* “ *πειθω* (*πιθ-*)

*εσταλκα-* “ *στέλλω* (*στελ-*)

*κεκρικα-* “ *κρίνω* (*κριν-*)

The second perfect belongs especially to themes ending in a consonant.

The following are the chief modifications of the reduplicated theme :

(a) *ε* of the theme becomes *ο*.

(b) Verbs of the second class have the strong form of the theme.

(c) *α* of the theme is often lengthened.

E. g. *εκτονα-* from *κτείνω* (*κτεν-*)

*πεφευγα* “ *φείγω* (*φυγ-*)

*πεφῆνα* “ *φαίνω* (*φαν-*)

**344. SYNOPSIS OF PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF λέω (λν-) AND φαίνο (φαν-).**

	FIRST PERFECT SYSTEM. 1 PERF.-STEM λελυκα-		SECOND PERFECT SYSTEM. 2 PERF.-STEM πεφηνα-	
	Perf.	Plur.	Perf.	Plur.
Ind.	λέλυκα	ἐλέλυκη	πέφηνα	ἐπεφήνη
Sub.	λελύκω		πεφήνω	
Opt.	λελύκοιμι		πεφήνοιμι	
Imv.	wanting		wanting	
Inf.	λελυκέναι (389 d)		πεφηνέναι (389 d)	
Ptc.	λελυκώς (389 e and 244)		πεφηνώς (389 e and 244)	

**345. Clauses of Result** are introduced by *ὥστε so that*, which takes the indicative when stress is laid on the actual occurrence of the result; otherwise, the infinitive. [927]

**346. VOCABULARY.**

ἀνόμημα, -ατος, τό (a neg. and νόμος)

ἀρπάζω (ἀρπαδ-)

ἀφανής 2 (a neg. and φαίνω)

εἶρηκα, pf. (no pres.)

νίζω (νιβ-)

ὄρκος

ὄψις, -εως, ἡ

Ξενίας

Πασίων, -ωνος, ὁ

πελταστής

στέλλω (στελ-)

τηρέω (τηρε-)

φρόνημα, -ατος, τό

ὥστε (conj.)

*transgression, lit. illegality*

*seize*

*out of sight*

*I have said*

*wash*

*oath*

*countenance*

*Xenias* } two of Cyrus's gen-

*Pasion* } erals who deserted.

*light-armed soldier, armed*

with πέλτη, or small shield

*send*

*keep, observe*

*spirit, courage*

*so that, comm. w. infin.*

**347. EXERCISE.**

1. ἡμεῖς μὲν τετηρήκαμεν, οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι λελύκασι, τὰς σπονδὰς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους. 2. δυνάμεθα, σὺν μείζονι φρονήματι τούτων (than these), εἰς μάχην εἰσ-έρχεσθαι. 3. τότε προσ-ῆλθε Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν τις λέγων τάδε· γιγνώσκω τὴν φωνὴν τούτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων, δεδούλευκα γὰρ ἐν τῇ ἐκείνων χώρᾳ. 4. Κῦρος, ἔχων οὖς εἴρηκα, ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Λυδίας. 5. ἐπεὶ Ξενίᾱς καὶ Πασίων ἀφανεῖς ἦσαν, Κῦρος συλλέξας τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἶπε τάδε· οὐκ ἀπο-πεφεύγασι οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε καταλαβεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον.

6. νῖψον ἀνομήματα μὴ μόνᾱν ὄψιν.<sup>1</sup>

1. We have conquered (νικάω) the enemy in this battle (cognate accus.). 2. They have plundered all the country which they have conquered. 3. One of the targeteers said (ἔφη) that he-had-been-a slave (perf. infin. act.) in the country of the barbarians. 4. The enemy had fled across the river. 5. We have seized many slaves from the Cilicians.

---

**LESSON LXIII.**

*Perfect Middle System, including the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Middle and Passive.*

Grammar: §§ 459, 460, 461, 466 (Formation); 318, 462, 463, 464, 465 (Inflection).

**348.** THE perfect and pluperfect tenses employ the same set of forms for the middle and passive voices.

The perfect middle-stem has no suffix like the per-

---

<sup>1</sup> Inscription on an ancient baptismal font at Ravenna. It reads alike in either direction. μόνᾱν is for μόνην.

fect active-stem, but consists merely of the reduplicated theme. In respect to vowel changes of the theme, the perfect middle follows the first perfect active.

E. g. *τετιμη-* from *τιμάω* (*τιμα-*)  
*εσταλ-* “ *στέλλω* (*στελ-*)

To this stem the endings are applied according to the rules for the inflection of the *-μι* form.

REMARK 1.—Many vowel-verbs add *σ* to the stem of the perfect middle: *τετέλεσ-μαι* from *τελέω* (*τελε-*) *complete*. This *σ* (which falls away before endings beginning with *σ*) is regularly added in the perfect middle of vowel-verbs which retain a short theme-vowel in the *future*, *ao rist*, and *perfect active*.

REMARK 2.—The inflection of the perfect middle system of mute-verbs and liquid-verbs requires more explanation than can be given here of the sound-changes caused by the concurrence of consonants in the stem and endings. These changes are illustrated in the paradigm of 328, and follow the rules of 51-54 and 61.

349. The future perfect-stem is made by adding *σ<sup>ο</sup>* to the perfect middle-stem. Its inflection is the same as that of the future middle, but its meaning is almost always passive.

350. SYNOPSIS OF PERFECT MIDDLE SYSTEM OF *λύω* (*λυ-*) AND *τελέω* (*τελε-*).

	1 PERF.-STEM <i>λελυ-</i>	1 PERF.-STEM <i>τετελε(σ)-</i>
	Perf. Plupf.	Perf.
Ind.	<i>λέλυμαι</i> <i>έλελύμην</i>	<i>τετέλεσ-μαι</i> <i>έτετελέσ-μην</i>
Sub.	<i>λελυμένος</i> <i>ῶ</i>	<i>τετελεσ-μένος</i> <i>ῶ</i>
Opt.	<i>λελυμένος</i> <i>είην</i>	<i>τετελεσ-μένος</i> <i>είην</i>
Imv.	<i>λέλυσο</i>	<i>τετέλε-σο</i>
Inf.	<i>λελύσθαι</i> (389 b)	<i>τετελέ-σθαι</i>
Ptc.	<i>λελυμένος</i> (389 b)	<i>τετελεσμένος</i>
		(For inflection of these forms, see 328)

**351. VOCABULARY.**

εὐνοια	<i>good-will</i>
μέσον	<i>center</i>
πιστός 3	<i>faithful</i>
τελέω	<i>complete</i>

**352. EXERCISE.**

1. ἐὰν νικῶμεν τὸ μέσον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἔφη Κῦρος πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας πρὸ τῆς μάχης, πάντα ἡμῖν (by us, 769) τετέλεσται. 2. παρ-ήγγελτο (orders had been given) τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἵεσθαι (to charge) ἐπὶ τὸ μέσον, ὅτι (because) βασιλεὺς ἦν ἐκεῖ. 3. Κῦρος ἀπ-έθανε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῷ οἱ πιστότατοι φίλοι μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ. 4. ἐν τούτοις ἦν Ἀρταπάτης ὃς ἐτετίμητο μεγάλως (greatly) διὰ τὴν εὐνοίαν. 5. αἱ σπονδαὶ λύνονται ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων.

1. All things had been well completed. 2. We have been greatly honored by Cyrus. 3. The suspicion of the Greeks and the insolence of the Persians seems to have been dissolved (λύω). 4. We have been commanded<sup>1</sup> (it has been commanded us) to advance as quickly as possible. 5. We have been released (λύω) by our master.

**353. CONNECTED PASSAGE FOR TRANSLATION.**

Ἐκ τῆς δευτέρᾳς Ἐπιστολῆς Παύλου, τοῦ Ἀποστόλου, πρὸς Τιμόθεον.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE FOLLOWING PASSAGE.**

ἀγαπάω (αγαπα-)	<i>love</i>
ἀνάλυσις, -εως, ἡ	<i>loosing, dissolving; hence dissolution (N. T.), (analysis)</i>
ἀγωνίζω (αγωνιδ-)	<i>contend in contest (agonize)</i>
ἀπό-κειμαι	<i>lie away, be laid up</i>

<sup>1</sup> παρ-αγγέλλω (αγγελ-).

δικαιοσύνη	justice
δρόμος	course, race-course
ἐπιφάνεια	appearance ( <b>Epiphany</b> )
ἤδη (adv.)	already
καιρός	time, specific time
λοιπός 3 (λείπω)	remaining
λοιπόν (adv.)	henceforth
πίστις, -εως, ἡ	faith
σπένδω	pour out (as libation)

4 : νν. 6-8. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἤδη σπένδομαι (passive) καὶ ὁ καιρὸς τῆς ἀναλύσεώς μου ἐφ-έστηκεν (perf. act. from ἐφ-ίστημι, "is at hand," lit. "stands at hand"). τὸν καλὸν ἀγῶνα ἠγώνισμαι, τὸν δρόμον τετέλεκα, τὴν πίστιν τετήρηκα. λοιπὸν ἀπό-κειται μοι ὁ τῆς δικαιοσύνης στέφανος ὃν ἀπο-δώσει μοι ὁ Κύριος, ὁ δίκαιος κριτής, ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, οὐ μόνον δὲ ἐμοὶ ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσιν τοῖς ἠγαπηκόσι τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν αὐτοῦ.

---

## LESSON LXIV.

*Passive Systems, including the First and Second Aorist and the First and Second Future Passive.*

Grammar : §§ 468, 469, 470, 471, 473, 319, 322.

**354.** As explained in § 107, most of the forms called Middle may have, when the connection requires it, a passive meaning.

In two tenses alone has the passive voice distinctive forms of its own. These two tenses are the aorist and the future. These tenses exist in a two-fold formation, so that a first aorist and first future passive, and a second aorist and second future passive,

are found. The inflection of the two formations is the same; the difference is in the stem. Verbs which have the first aorist and first future passive ordinarily lack the second, and vice versa.

**355.** The first aorist passive-stem is formed by appending the suffix *-θε-*; the second aorist passive-stem, by appending the suffix *-ε-*, to the theme. These suffixes become *-θη-* and *-η-* before a single consonant in the ending. The special suffix is necessary, since the Greek has only two sets of personal endings. Without the suffix the aorist passive would be identical with the second aorist active of the *μ* form, of which in general it follows the inflection.

The modifications of the theme in the formation of the first aorist passive-stem are in general the same as in the perfect middle-stem (see Lesson LXIII). It is to be added that vowel verbs lengthen a short final vowel of the theme before the suffix *-θε-*, and that mute themes change a final

Labial (*π, β, φ*) to *φ* before *θε*;

Palatal (*κ, γ, χ*) to *χ* “ “

Lingual (*τ, δ, θ*) to *σ* “ “

Thus, from *τιμάω* (*τιμα-*) *honor*, 1 pass.-stem *τιμηθε-*.

“ *τελέω* (*τελε-*) *complete*, “ *τελεσθε-*.

“ *λείπω* (*λιπ-*) *leave*, “ *λειφθε-*.

“ *ἄγω* (*αγ-*) *lead*, “ *αχθε-*.

“ *πείθω* (*πιθ-*) *persuade*, “ *πεισθε-*.

**356.** The second aor. pass. belongs especially to consonant themes. The only modification of the theme is that *ε* of the theme is changed to *α*.

Thus, from *κόπτω* (*κοπ-*), 2 aor.-stem *κοπε-*.

“ *στέλλω* (*στελ-*), “ *σταλε-*.



357. SYNOPSIS OF 1 AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω (λυ-), AND OF 2 AOR. PASSIVE SYSTEM OF στέλλω (στελ-).

	1 PASSIVE-STEM λυθε-	2 PASSIVE-STEM σταλε-
Ind.	ἐλύθην	ἐστάλην
Sub.	λυθῶ (473 a)	σταλῶ (473 a)
Opt.	λυθείην	σταλείην
Imv.	λύθητι (73 b)	στάληθι
Inf.	λυθῆναι (389 d)	σταλῆναι (389 d)
Ptc.	λυθείς (389 e)	σταθείς (389 c)

358. The stem of the future passive is formed by adding σ<sup>ο</sup>|<sub>ε</sub> to the stem of the aorist passive. Thus, the first future passive will end in -θησομαι, the second future passive in -ησομαι. The inflection is in all respects like that of the future middle.

359. SYNOPSIS OF THE 1 FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF λύω (λυ-), AND OF 2 FUTURE PASSIVE SYSTEM OF στέλλω (στελ-).

	1 FUT. PASS.-STEM λυθησ <sup>ο</sup>   <sub>ε</sub>	2 FUT. PASS.-STEM σταλησ <sup>ο</sup>   <sub>ε</sub>
Ind.	λυθήσομαι	σταλήσομαι
Opt.	λυθησοίμην	σταλησοίμην
Inf.	λυθήσεσθαι	σταλήσεσθαι
Ptc.	λυθησόμενος	σταλησόμενος

360. VOCABULARY.

ἄλῡπος 2 (a neg. and λύπη grief)	without grief
ἀτιμάζω (ατιμαδ-)	disgrace
δια-βάλλω (βαλ-, βλα-)	slander; lit. throw across, of insinuations and falsehood

δι-άγω (-αγ)	<i>lead or carry through ; pass through</i>
κατα-κόπτω (κοπ-)	<i>cut to pieces</i>
οἰστός	<i>arrow</i>
προδότης	<i>traitor, Lat. proditor</i>
τάφος	<i>tomb (epi-taph)</i>
τοξεύω (τοξευ-)	<i>wound with arrow</i>
συλ-λαμβάνω (λαβ-)	<i>apprehend, arrest</i>

### 361. EXERCISE.

1. Μίλητος ἐ-πολιορκήθη πολλοὺς μῆνας ὑπὸ Κύρου.  
 2. πολλαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους ἐδόθησαν (δίδωμι) Κύρῳ  
 ὑπὸ βασιλέως. 3. ἡ φυγὴ τῶν πολεμίων ὑπὸ τοῦ  
 ἀγγέλου τῷ ἄρχοντι ἠγγέλθη (ἀγγέλλω). 4. αἰὲ ἡ  
 σοφία κέκριται καὶ κριθήσεται (κρίνω, 448 b) ἄριστον  
 κτήμα. 5. διαβληθεὶς (448 c) ὑπὸ Τισσαφέρνους Κύρος  
 ἠτῆμάσθη ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. 6. οὐδεὶς τάφος Ὀρόντου,  
 τοῦ προδότου, ἐφάνη. 7. δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος  
 στρατεύματος κατεκόπησαν ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν. 8.  
 Ὀλίγοι πιστοὶ φίλοι ἀμφὶ Κῦρον ἐλείφθησαν. 9. εἰάν  
 μοι πεισθῇτε, λέγει Μένων τοῖς Ἑλλησι, τῆμθ' ἔσσεσθε  
 πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου.

10. οὐδεὶς ἄλυπος τὸν βίον δι-ήγαγεν (436).

1. Cyrus was sent by his father (as) satrap of Phrygia and Cappadocia. 2. One soldier in Cyrus's army was said to have been wounded by an arrow. 3. The generals were arrested and led to the king. 4. The soldiers obeyed Menon, and crossed the river. 5. Miletus will be besieged by Cyrus, but will not be taken. 6. If we do not conquer, we shall be cut to pieces.

Write 1 sing. indic. of the 1 aor and 1 fut. pass. from the following verbs: ἄγω (αγ-) *lead*, βάλλω

(βαλ-, βλα-) *throw*, λαμβάνω (λαβ-, 1 pass.-stem ληφθε-) *take*, πέμπω (πεμπ-) *send*, δίδωμι (δο-) *give*.

Write 3 pl. indic. of the 2 aor. and 2 fut. pass. from the following verbs: κόπτω (κοπ-) *cut*, στέλλω (στελ-) *send*, τρέπω (τρεπ-) *turn*.

## LESSON LXV.

### *Review of Verb λύω.—Verbal Adjectives.*

Grammar: §§ 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319.

### 362. SPECIMEN review questions on the verb λύω:

1. Give the principal parts.
2. What is the theme?
3. What suffixes are added to the theme in forming following tense-stems: pres., fut., 1 aor., perf. act., aor. pass., fut. pass.?
4. Name these tense-stems: λῦο|ε-, λῦσ|ε-, λῦσα-.
5. What tenses have the augment?
6. What tenses have the reduplication?
7. Inflect the subjunctive in follg. tenses: pres., aor., perf.
8. Inflect the optative in follg. tenses: pres., fut., aor., perf.
9. Inflect the imperative in the pres. and aor. tenses.
10. Give all the active participles, all the middle participles, all the passive participles.
11. What are the variable vowels of the subjunctive, and when is each used?
12. What is the mode-suffix of the optative?
13. To what tenses are the irregularities of accent of λύω confined?
14. To what modes of these tenses? What are the irregularly accented forms?
15. What is the quantity of final αι and οι?
16. Write out and give orally the tense-stems of παιδεύω (παιδευ-) *I educate* and νικάω (νικά-) *I am victorious*.

**363.** There remain two forms of the verb which closely resemble, in meaning, passive participles. They are called Verbal Adjectives. They are formed by adding to the theme the suffixes *-τός* and *-τέος*, and are declined like adjectives of the vowel declension.

Thus, from *λυω* (*λυ-*) come the verbals:

*λυτός, -ή, -όν, loosable, or that may be loosed, cf.*

*Lat. solutus; and*

*λυτέος, -ᾶ, -ον, that must be loosed, cf. Lat. solvendus.*

Of the two verbals, that in *-τέος* is much the more common and the more important; it corresponds very closely in meaning and use to the Latin participle in *-ndus*. When formed from a transitive verb it has both a personal and impersonal use, and may be used either in a passive or active sense.

**364. RULE 1.**—The verbal in *-τέος* takes the agent, or doer of the action, in the dative: [991]

*τὰ πεδία διαβατέα ἐστὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις.*

*The plains must be crossed by the soldiers.*

REMARK.—For the agent usually expressed by *ὑπό* with the gen., see page 42.

**365. RULE 2.**—In the personal construction, the verbal in *-τέος* is passive in meaning, and agrees with its subject like any other adjective; in the impersonal construction, the verbal stands in the neuter, is active in meaning, and takes an object in an oblique case: [989, 990]

*ἐπιστολὴ γραπτέα ἐστὶν* (personal).

*A letter must be written.*

*γραφτέον ἐστὶν ἐπιστολήν* (impersonal).

*One must write a letter.*

πειστέον ἐστὶ τοῖς νόμοις (impersonal).

*One must obey the laws.*

In each of the three preceding examples a dat. of the agent might be added (e. g., ἐμοί or ἡμῖν). In the last example the impersonal construction only is possible, because the deponent verb πείθομαι, *obey*, does not govern the acc. case.

### 366. VOCABULARY.

	Personal.	Impersonal.
γραπτέος (γραφ-)	<i>must be written</i>	<i>one must write</i>
δια-βατέος (βα-)	<i>must be crossed</i>	<i>one must cross</i>
μαχητέος (μαχ-, μαχε-)		<i>one must fight</i>
πειστέος (πιθ-, πειθ-)		<i>one must obey</i>
ποιητέος (ποιε-)	<i>must be done</i>	<i>one must do</i>
πορευτέος (πορευ-)		<i>one must march</i>
στατέος (στα-)	<i>must be placed</i>	<i>one must place</i>
δεσμός	<i>chain</i>	
δεσμώτης	<i>prisoner</i>	
ὅπως, conj. com. w. fut. ind. <i>in order that</i> , lit. <i>in what way</i>		

### 367. EXERCISE.

1. τὸ στράτευμα στατέον ἐστὶν ὑπὸ (under) τὸ ὄρος. ἡ στρατιὰ στατέα ἐστὶν ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος. στατέον ἐστὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος. 2. πάντα ποιητέα (ἐστὶν) ἡμῖν ὅπως νικήσομεν. ποιητέον ἐστὶ πάντα ὅπως νικήσομεν. 3. μαχητέον ἐστίν, ἐὰν νικᾶν βουλώμεθα. 4. ἀπ-ελθόντες δια-βησόμεθα τὸν ποταμόν. 5. ἡμῖν ἀπ-ελθοῦσι (2 aor. ptc.) τὸν ποταμόν δια-βατέον ἐστίν. 6. πορευτέον ἐστὶ τοῖς Ἑλλησι τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς (720) μακροτάτους.

1. The general must halt his (the) army under the mountain. 2. We must cross many rivers without bridges, while the enemy (pl.) hinder (gen. absol.). 3. Having come and seen, we reported that the enemy

were fleeing. 4. The Greeks must make every effort (lit., must do all things), in order that they may conquer the enemy. 5. The prisoner must be loosed from his (the) chains. 6. We must loose these prisoners from their (the) chains.

### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. ἡ γέφυρα λυτέα ἐστὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. 2. ἡμῖν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ γέφυραν λυτέον ἐστίν. 3. Θεῷ πειστέον· Βασιλέα τιμητέον. 4. μαχητέον ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ὡς ἄριστα.

1. We must come into the enemy's country and loose (lit. having come we must loose) the prisoners. 2. Since the bridge across the river Euphrates has been broken (τῆς ἐν τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ γεφύρας λυθείσης), the Greeks must cross that great river with transports. 3. We must march to (ἐπὶ w. acc.) the river Euphrates. 4. We must obey God rather than (μᾶλλον ἢ) men.

---

## LESSON LXVI.

### *Present and Past Conditions.*

Grammar: §§ 892, 893, 894, 895.

**368.** FUTURE conditions have been treated of under two classes in Lesson XXVIII. This lesson treats of conditions referring to present or past time, also under two classes.

The FIRST CLASS includes conditional sentences in which the truth of the condition is for the moment assumed. In conditions of this class it is usually

possible to substitute for "if" some other conjunction, such as "since," "as sure as," without materially altering the sense.

The following is the formula :

**369. RULE.**—In the condition, εἰ with present or past indicative; in the conclusion, any tense of the indicative (without ἄν). [893]

εἰ ἔχει (εἶχε, ἔσχε) τὸ βιβλίον, δίδωσι (ἐδίδου, ἔδωκεν) αὐτό.

*If (as sure as, since) he has (had) the book, he gives (gave) it.*

A Latin name, *Sumptio Dati*, "supposition of that which is taken for granted," has been suggested for this variety of conditions.

**370.** The conditions just considered are supposed to refer to single, particular cases, and hence are called by grammarians *particular* conditions. There belongs here also another class, which are called *general* conditions, because they are understood as holding good in a large number of cases, and often contain a general truth. They may be recognized by the possibility of substituting for "if" the conjunctions "if ever," "as often as," "whenever," without essential change in the sense. In English the indicative is regularly used in such sentences, in both the condition and the conclusion. In Greek the indicative is used in the conclusion; but the verb of the condition is subjunctive or optative.

The following is the formula :

**371. RULE.**—General conditions referring to present time have: in the condition, εἰάν with the subjunctive (any tense); in the conclusion, the present indicative. [894, 1 and 2]

General conditions referring to past time have: in the condition, *εἰ* with the optative (pres., aor., or perf.); in the conclusion, the imperfect indicative.

*εἰάν τι λαμβάνῃ (λάβῃ), δίδωσι τοῖς πτωχοῖς.*

*If (as often as, whenever) he receives anything, he (always) gives it to the poor.*

*εἴ τι λαμβάνοι (λάβοι), ἐδίδου τοῖς πτωχοῖς.*

*If (as often as, whenever) he received anything, he (always) used to give it to the poor.*

REMARK.—It will be observed that general conditions coincide in the form of the conditional clause with the first and second forms respectively of future conditions described in Lesson XXVIII. It is the verb of the conclusion, always *indicative* and always implying *repeated action*, which marks them as general.

**372.** The SECOND CLASS includes conditions past fulfillment, and therefore contrary to fact.

The following is the formula:

**373. RULE.**—In the condition, *εἰ* with a past tense of the indicative; in the conclusion, a past tense of the indicative with *ἄν*. [895]

*εἰ εἶχε τὸ βιβλίον, ἐδίδου ἄν αὐτό.*

*If he had (were to have) the book, he would give it.*

He does not have it, therefore he does not give it.

*εἰ ἔσχε τὸ βιβλίον, ἔδωκεν ἄν αὐτό.*

*If he had had the book, he would have given it.*

He did not have it, therefore he did not give it.

REMARK.—For this variety of conditions a Latin name, *Sumptio Falsi*, “supposition of that which is no longer true,” has been proposed. The tenses chiefly used in conditions contrary to reality are the imperfect and aorist. Ordinarily, the



imperfect implies that the condition refers to present time; the aorist, that it refers to time past.

### 374. VOCABULARY.

ἀπο-κρίνομαι (κριν-)	<i>reply</i>
γυμνάζω (γυμναδ-)	<i>exercise</i>
ἐγγύς (adv. w. gen.)	<i>near</i>
θηρεύω	<i>hunt</i>
οἶδα (491)	<i>I know</i>
χάριν οἶδα	<i>I feel gratitude</i>
παίω	<i>strike</i>
πάντως adv. (πάς)	<i>by all means, certainly</i>
παράδεισος	<i>park</i> (Engl. derivative, <b>Paradise</b> )
πέραν (adv. w. gen.)	<i>on farther side of</i>

### 375. EXERCISE.

1. Κλέαρχος Κύρῳ εἶπεν· οἶει, ὦ Κύρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν σου, Ἀρταξέρξην, μαχεῖσθαι (fut. inf. of μάχομαι);  
 2. νῆ Δία, ἀπ-εκρίνατο Κύρος, εἰ Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος παῖς ἐστὶ, τὴν βασιλεῖαν τῶν Περσῶν οὐ λήψομαι (fut. of λαμβάνω) ἄνευ μάχης. 3. οἶδα ὅτι οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὐκ ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, λέγει γὰρ ὅτι οὐκ εἶδεν πολίτας. πολίτας δὲ πάντως ἂν εἶδεν, εἰ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἦλθεν. 4. ἐὰν τοῖς στρατιώταις δοκῇ (§ 164, page 61) ἀπ-ιέναι, Κλέαρχος ἔψεται αὐτοῖς. 5. εἰ εὖ ἔπαθεν ὑπὸ Κύρου, χάριν ἂν ᾗδει (491). 6. εἰ τέκνα Ἀβραὰμ (gen. case) ἦτε, ἐ-ποιεῖτε ἂν ἔργα Ἀβραάμ. 7. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ ἦν μέγας παράδεισος ἐν ᾧ ἐ-θήρευεν, εἰ βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους γυμνάσαι. 8. ἐὰν ἐγγὺς ἔλθῃ ὁ θάνατος, οὐδεὶς ἀπο-θνήσκειν βούλεται. 9. εἰ Κλέαρχός τινα βλακεύοντα (shirking) ἴδοι, ἔ-παιε τοῦτον.

1. We can not cross all the rivers in this country, if the enemy hinder. 2. We should not have crossed

this bridge, if the enemy had hindered. 3. What would have hindered the soldiers, if Cyrus had led (*ἤγαγεν*)? 4. We should have perished (*ἀπ-ωλόμεθα ἂν*), if we had not taken food and water. 5. Cyrus hunts in the park before the palace, if (as often as) he wishes to exercise his horses. 6. If the enemy had captured (taken) us, we should have been slain (2 aor. of *ἀποθνήσκω*). 7. If Clearchus had not led the right wing of the Greeks, Cyrus would have conquered. 8. If we wish to conquer, we must fight as-bravely-as-possible (*ὡς κράτιστα*). 9. The Greeks must cross the first bridge which they see.

#### ORAL EXERCISE.

1. *τί ἂν ἔπαθον, εἰ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἦλθον;* 2. *οὐδὲν ἂν ἔπαθες, εἰ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἦλθες.* 3. *δι-έβην ἂν τὴν γέφυραν, εἰ μὴ εἶδον τοὺς βαρβάρους πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ.* 4. *ἐάν τι ἔχω, δίδωμι τοῖς πτωχοῖς.* 5. *εἰ ἐβούλετο ἡμῖν ἔπεσθαι, ἐδύνατο ἂν.*

1. If you had called (*ἐ-κάλεσας*) me, I would have come. 2. Tell me, if you wish anything. 3. I wish nothing. 4. If I wish anything, I (always) tell my friends.

---

#### LESSON LXVII.

*List of Common Conjunctions and Particles.—Connected Descriptive Passage.*

**376.** THIS lesson contains a list of the most common Greek conjunctions and particles. Particle is a name given to certain short words, commonly adverbial in their character, which give various shades

of expression to a Greek sentence, commonly indicated in English by varying intonations of the voice. The meaning of particles is always affected by the connection, and can at times be more easily felt than described.

The words in the following list marked \* are *post-positive*, i. e., they can not begin a sentence, but are ordinarily its second word :

377. *ἀλλά*, conj., *but*, strongly adversative. It was, in origin, a ntr. pl. (with changed accent) of *ἄλλος* *other*, and meant *in other respects*.

*γάρ*,\* conj., *for*.

*δέ*,\* conj., *but, and*; less strongly adversative than *ἀλλά*, and often merely continuative, like *καί*.

*δή*,\* particle, *now, indeed, in particular, just*; marks something as immediately present to the mind, and is capable of a great variety of renderings. It often means *accordingly, then*, as in *μὲν δή*. It sometimes approaches *ἤδη*, Lat. *jam*, in meaning, as in *νῦν δή*, *now already*.

*ἐπεί*, adverbial conj., *when, as*.

*ἐν ᾧ*, adverbial conj., *while*, lit. *in what [time]*.

*καί*, conj. *and*, *καὶ—καί, τε—καί*, *both—and*.

*μὲν*\*—*δέ*,\* conjunctions, marking a contrast, strong or slight, between clauses, the first of which contains the *μὲν*.

*μέντοι*,\* particle, *however*.

*ὅτε*, conj., *when, as*.

*οὖν*,\* inferential adv., *therefore*.

*ὥς*, adverbial conj., *when, as*.

## 378. VOCABULARY.

ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ	<i>contest</i>
ἀγωνίζω	<i>contend</i>
αἶρω	<i>lift</i>
Ἀκαδημία	<i>Academy, locality — with gymnasium—in suburbs of Athens. Here Plato taught</i>
ἄλλομαι (dep.)	<i>leap (Lat. salio)</i>
ἄλμα, -τος, τό	<i>leaping</i>
ἀρχαῖος 3	<i>ancient</i>
ἀσκέω	<i>practise</i>
ἄσκησις, -εως, ἡ	<i>practice</i>
βάρος, -ους, τό	<i>weight</i>
γυμνάσιον	<i>gymnasium</i>
γυμναστική	<i>gymnastics</i>
γυμνός 3	<i>naked</i>
γωνία	<i>corner, angle</i>
δια-τηρέω	<i>preserve</i>
διάφορος 2	<i>different</i>
δίσκος	<i>discus, quoit (disc)</i>
δρόμος	<i>running (hippo-drome)</i>
ἐξ-άγω	<i>lead out, derive</i>
ἐτοιμάζω (ἐτοιμος 2)	<i>prepare, make ready</i>
ἱμάτιον	<i>mantle, outer garment</i>
ισχυρός 3	<i>strong</i>
κάτω (-τέρω, -τάτω, 260)	<i>below, low</i>
κρέμαμαι (dep.)	<i>hang (intrans.)</i>
οἶκημα, -τος, τό	<i>room</i>
οὗ (adv. of place)	<i>where</i>
πάλη	<i>wrestling</i>
πυγμή	<i>boxing</i>
τυγχάνω	<i>attain</i>
ὑγιής 2	<i>healthy</i>
ὥς (as adv. w. numerals)	<i>about</i>

## 379.

## Τὸ Γυμνάσιον.

Τὸ ἐν Ἀθήναις γυμνάσιον ἦν τόπος οὗ οἱ νέοι Ἀθηναῖοι ἤσκουν. τὸ δὲ ὄνομα ἐξ-άγεται ἀπὸ γυμνός, ὅτι<sup>1</sup> οἱ ἀθληταὶ ἠγώνιζον γυμνοί, τοῦτό ἐστι, ἄνευ τῶν ἱματίων. οἱ ἀγῶνες ἐν τῷ ἀρχαίῳ γυμνασίῳ ἦσαν οἶδε· δρόμος, δίσκος, ἄλμα, πυγμή, πάλη. ἐν δὲ ταῖς καθ' ἡμῶν ἡμέραις<sup>2</sup> πάντες ἤδη αἰσθάνονται τῆς ἀνάγκης τῆς καθ' ἡμέραν<sup>3</sup> ἀσκήσεως ἵνα διατηρηθῇ τὸ σῶμα ἰσχυρὸν καὶ ὑγιές. ἐν πολλαῖς οὖν σχολαῖς κατ-έστη<sup>4</sup> γυμνάσια ἐν οἷς οἱ μαθηταὶ γυμνάζουσιν. Κατά-βηθι, εἰ βούλει, εἰς τὸ κάτω μέρος τῆς Ἐλευθέρᾳς Ἀκαδημείας τῇ ὥρᾳ πρὸ τῶν μαθημάτων καὶ λέγε τί ὁρᾷς. ὁρῶ, ἐν οἰκήματί τινι μεγάλῳ, ὡς ἑκατὸν μαθητὰς ἀσκούντας τὰς διαφόρους γυμναστικὰς. ἐν μέσῳ τῷ γυμνασίῳ ἄλλονται νέοι τινές, εἰς δὲ τούτων ἤδη ἔτυχε τοῦ ὕψους πέντε ποδῶν. ἰδὲ<sup>5</sup> ἐν ἄλλῳ τόπῳ νέους κρεμαμένους ἀπὸ τῆς κλίμακος, ἐν ᾧ<sup>6</sup> ἄλλοι τρέχουσι τὸ στάδιον· στάδιον γὰρ ἔχομεν ἐν τῷ γυμνασίῳ, ὅλῳ μείον δυοῖν πλέθρων τὸ μῆκος. ἐν τῇ δὲ γωνίᾳ ἐκείνῃ ὁρῶ ἰσχυρότατον ἀθλητὴν μεγάλα βάρη αἶροντα. τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον οἱ ἡμέτεροι νέοι ἐτοιμάζονται τοῖς τοῦ βίου ἀγῶσι.

---

<sup>1</sup> ὅτι, "because."

<sup>2</sup> ἐν ταῖς καθ' ἡμῶν ἡμέραις, "in our days."

<sup>3</sup> καθ' ἡμέραν, "daily."

<sup>4</sup> κατ-έστη, 2 aor. from καθ-ίστημι, "have been established."

<sup>5</sup> ἰδέ, imperative from εἶδον, "see."

<sup>6</sup> ἐν ᾧ, "while."

## LESSON LXVIII.

*Anabasis commenced.—Recomposition, based upon the Anabasis.*

Review Grammar Lesson: §§ 354, 355 with a and b, 356, 360.

## 380. VOCABULARY.

ἀμφότερος 3	both (predicate position)
ἀσθενέω	be sick
γεωργός (γῆ, ἔργον)	farmer, lit. earth-worker (Georgic, George)
Γρύλλος	Gryllus, an Athenian, father of Xenophon
ἔτι νέος ὢν	while still a youth
ιστοριο-γράφος	historian, historiographer
Σπάρτη	Sparta
συγ-γραφεύς, -εως, ὁ	author, writer
τελευτή	end
ὑπ-οπτεύω	suspect
φιλό-σοφος	philosopher

381. [Artaxerxes and Cyrus are summoned to their father's death-bed.]

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος <sup>828, 506, 1</sup> γίνονται <sup>172, a</sup> παῖδες <sup>290</sup> δύο,  
<sup>249</sup> πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ  
<sup>856</sup> δὲ ἡσθένει <sup>360</sup> Δαρεῖος καὶ ὑπ-ώπτει <sup>510, 4</sup> τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου,  
<sup>678, a</sup> ἐβούλετο <sup>478</sup> τὸ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω <sup>950, 984</sup> παρ-εῖναι. <sup>528, 9</sup> ὁ μὲν οὖν  
 πρεσβύτερος <sup>950, 984</sup> παρ-ὼν <sup>528, 9</sup> ἐ-τύγχανεν.

**382. RECOMPOSITION.**

1. Who was the author of the Anabasis?
2. Xenophon, the son of Gryllus, an Athenian, was the author of the Anabasis.
3. While still a youth, he became a disciple of Socrates.
4. Xenophon did-many-things-well<sup>1</sup>: he was farmer, soldier, general, philosopher, historian.
5. Xenophon, although he was an Athenian,<sup>2</sup> loved Sparta more than Athens.
6. The beginning of the Anabasis is as-follows<sup>3</sup>:
7. Artaxerxes was the older, Cyrus the younger, son of Darius, King of the Persians.
8. Darius, having-fallen-sick,<sup>4</sup> wished Artaxerxes and Cyrus to be present.
9. Artaxerxes alone happened to be present.

**383. ORAL EXERCISE.**

1. I am son of Darius, King of the Persians.
2. Cyrus was younger than Artaxerxes, his brother.
3. The death of Darius was approaching (*προσέρχομαι*).
4. While death approaches, Darius wishes to see both his sons.
5. The older was present, but the younger was absent.
6. Cyrus happened to be absent, but Artaxerxes happened to be present.

<sup>1</sup> πολλὰ εὖ ἐποίει.<sup>2</sup> ἤθε.<sup>3</sup> Ἀθηναῖος ὢν.<sup>4</sup> ἀσθενήσας.

**384.** The following suggestions are made to the scholar on commencing connected translation :

1) Prepare and keep a careful written translation of that part of the Anabasis (first seventeen sections) included in the present and the succeeding twelve lessons.

2) Pronounce aloud the Greek of each new lesson, until it can be read as rapidly and as correctly as an equal amount of English.

3) Translate aloud from the Greek into English, at least once a week, the entire narrative from the commencement. No other exercise is more profitable than this review and re-review. It gives new ideas of the significance of verb- and case-endings, makes the language seem living by bringing out the connection between the brief portions studied in separate lessons, and will do more than any other one thing to lay the foundation of future scholarship.

4) Make each new lesson a review grammar lesson. Leave no form without understanding it thoroughly, and, if needful explanation is not given in the class, seek it of the teacher in private.

5) It is expected that the principal parts of all verbs, to which references are given, will be carefully learned. This task will be rendered easier if the scholar keeps from the beginning a list of the verbs referred to. It is also well to check off such verbs in the verb-lists in the grammar.

## LESSON LXIX.

Review Grammar Lesson : §§ 968, 969.

### 385. VOCABULARY.

<i>ἀθροίζω</i>	<i>gather, collect</i>
<i>ἀπο-δείκνυμι</i>	(1) <i>show forth</i> , (2) <i>appoint</i>
<i>ἤδη</i> (adv.)	<i>already</i>
<i>ἱκανός</i> 3	<i>sufficient, competent</i>



Καστωλός	<i>Castōlus</i> , plain in Western Asia Minor
Παρράσιος 3	<i>Parrhasian</i> , of <i>Parrhasia</i> , a town in Arcadia
• πιστός 3	<i>trusty</i>
σατράπης	<i>satrap</i> , title of governor of a Persian province
Τισσαφέρνης, -ους	<i>Tissaphernes</i> , satrap of Southern Asia Minor
Φαρνάβαζος	<i>Pharnabazus</i> , satrap of Northern Asia Minor

**386.** [*Cyrus, coming from a distance, arrives only just before his father's death.*]

Κῦρον δὲ <sup>508, 21, 828</sup> μετα-πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς <sup>726</sup> αὐτὸν  
σατράπην <sup>528, 8</sup> ἐ-ποίησε· καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπ-έδειξε  
<sup>240</sup> πάντων ὅσοι εἰς <sup>729 g</sup> Καστωλοῦ <sup>898</sup> πεδίου ἀθροίζονται. ἀνα-  
<sup>519, 7</sup> βαίνει οὖν ὁ <sup>528, 5</sup> Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ  
<sup>658</sup> τῶν Ἑλλήνων <sup>508, 16 & 968 b</sup> ἔχων <sup>147</sup> ὀπλίτας ἀν-έβη <sup>628</sup> τριακοσίους,  
ἀρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

### 387. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Before - his - death<sup>1</sup> Darius made Cyrus, his younger son, general of Asia Minor.

2. In this country there were already two satraps : Pharnabazus and Tissaphernes.

3. Cyrus, not wishing to leave-behind<sup>2</sup> Tissaphernes, takes him with himself.

4. And Cyrus also took with him three hundred hoplites of his Greek soldiers (of the Greeks).

<sup>1</sup> πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου.

<sup>2</sup> κατα-λείπει.

5. Xenias was commander of these hoplites.
6. Having taken sufficient soldiers, I will go up.
7. We went up with many hoplites.
8. Let us appoint Cyrus general of all who assemble in the plain of Castolus.

### 388. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Darius appoints Cyrus satrap.
2. Cyrus is-sent-for from the province.
3. He takes sufficient trusty friends and goes up to Babylon.
4. Let us assemble in the great plain of Castolus.
5. Let us take our friends and go up to Babylon, that great city.
6. I went up without-having (not having) friends, but Xenias happened to have three hundred hoplites.

---

## LESSON LXX.

Review Grammar Lesson: §§ 420, 421 a, b, c, 422 (Formation of Future); 932, 1 and 2 (Optative in Indirect Discourse).

### 389. VOCABULARY.

ἀπο-κτείνω	<i>kill</i>
δια-βάλλω	<i>slander, slanderously charge</i>
ἐξ-αιτέω	<i>ask from (another), beg off</i>
ἐχθρός, adj. used as subst.	<i>personal enemy, cf. Lat. inimicus</i>
ἐπί, w. dat. of pers., sometimes	<i>in power of</i>
μήποτε	<i>never</i>

**390.** [*Tissaphernes causes the arrest of Cyrus. Cyrus, on his release, determines to dethrone his brother.*]

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατ-έστη εἰς τὴν  
 βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης δια-βάλλει τὸν  
 Κύρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὡς (that) ἐπι-βουλεύοι αὐτῷ. ὁ  
 δὲ πείθεται τε καὶ συλ-λαμβάνει Κύρον ὡς ἀπο-κτενῶν.  
 ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξ-αιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ  
 τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπ-ῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς,  
 βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ',  
 ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου.

### 391. RECOMPOSITION.

1. After-this<sup>1</sup> Darius died and Artaxerxes was settled<sup>2</sup> in the kingdom.

2. Darius having-died and Artaxerxes having-been-settled in the kingdom, Tissaphernes, being-a-false-friend,<sup>3</sup> slandered (aor.) Cyrus.

3. Cyrus is-plotting-against his brother: so (οὕτω) Tissaphernes slanderously-charges.

4. Tissaphernes slanderously-charges that Cyrus is plotting against his brother, Artaxerxes. Tissaphernes was-slanderously-charging that Cyrus was plotting-against Artaxerxes.

5. I will-put-to-death my brother, says Artaxerxes, and forthwith<sup>4</sup> arrests him.

6. Parysatis begs-off-for-herself Cyrus, her younger son.

<sup>1</sup> μετὰ ταῦτα.

<sup>3</sup> ψευδῆς φίλος ὢν.

<sup>2</sup> κατ-έστη.

<sup>4</sup> εὐθύς.

7. Having thus departed, Cyrus deliberates in-what-way he shall no longer be in-the-power-of Artaxerxes.

8. I will become king instead-of him, he says, if I can.

### 392. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. I will never slander my friends.
2. Who slandered Cyrus?
3. Tissaphernes, his false friend, will slander Cyrus.
4. Cyrus will be slandered by Tissaphernes.
5. I hope that I shall never be slandered by false friends.
6. My (personal) enemies (ἐχθροί) slanderously-charged that I plotted against my native-country.

---

## LESSON LXXI.

Review Grammar Lesson: §§ 880, 881, 885, 887 (Modes in Final Clauses).

### 393. VOCABULARY.

ἀπαράσκευος 2	<i>unprepared</i>
βασιλεύω	<i>rule, reign</i>
δια-τίθημι	<i>place in order, arrange, dispose</i>
ἐπι-κρύπτω	<i>conceal</i>
ἐπι-μελέομαι	<i>take care of</i>
εὐνοϊκῶς (εὖ, νόος) ἔχειν	<i>be of friendly mind</i>
ὑπ-άρχω	<i>(1) begin, (2) begin service of any kind, aid</i>
ὥστε, conj. of result, comm. followed by infin.	<i>so that, that</i>

**394.** [*With his mother's constant help, Cyrus attaches to himself Persians of all classes. He begins to levy a Greek force.*]

Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπ-ἤρχε τῷ Κύρῳ,  
 φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην.  
 ὅστις δ' ἀφ-ἱκνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτόν,  
 πάντας οὕτω δια-τιθεῖς ἀπ-επέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον  
 φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων  
 ἐπ-εμελεῖτο, ὥς (in order that) πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν  
 καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν  
 ἡθροίζεν ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος ὅπως ὅτι  
 ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέᾳ.

### 395. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Parysatis, Cyrus's mother, loved her younger son more than the reigning Artaxerxes.

2. Many Persians used-to-come from the king to the province of Cyrus.

3. All these became (ἐ-γένοντο) friends to him.

4. He had also many barbarians in his province.

5. I will take-care-of them, he said, in order that they may be competent to fight.

6. And I will collect a Greek force from all the Greek cities.

7. Having collected this force as secretly as possible, I will take the king unprepared.

8. Both Greeks and barbarians in the province were well disposed to Cyrus.

**396. ORAL EXERCISE.**

1. Parysatis was Cyrus's mother.
2. Mothers love their youngest sons (the youngest son).
3. Envoys came from the great king to Cyrus, the satrap.
4. These envoys became friends to Cyrus.
5. If (as often as) any one comes from-the-presence-of the king, Cyrus makes-him-his-friend<sup>1</sup>.
6. If (as often as) any one came from-the-presence-of the king, Cyrus used-to-make him his friend.<sup>2</sup>

**LESSON LXXII.**

Review Grammar Lesson : §§ 428, 429, 431 (Formation of First Aorist).

**397. VOCABULARY.**

ἀρχαῖος 3	<i>ancient</i>
τὸ ἀρχαῖον, adv. acc.	<i>anciently</i>
ἔξεστι, fut. ἔξεσται	<i>it is possible, it will be possible</i>
Ἴωνικός 3	<i>Ionian</i>
ὅσος 3 (rel. adj.)	<i>as much as, pl. as many as</i>

**398.** [*Cyrus's method of raising a Greek force is described in detail.*]

<sup>272 c</sup> Ὡδε <sup>818</sup> οὖν ἐ-ποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν · <sup>508, 16</sup> ὅπόσας <sup>768</sup> εἶχε φυλα-  
<sup>678, a</sup> κας ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις <sup>651</sup> <sup>254, 5</sup> ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλεί-

<sup>1</sup> αὐτὸν φίλον ἑαυτῷ ποιεῖται.

<sup>2</sup> Write sentences 5 and 6 according to the formula for general conditions (§ 894, 1 and 2).

<sup>254, 1</sup> στους καὶ <sup>978</sup> βελτίστους, <sup>970</sup> ὡς <sup>1</sup> ἐπι-βουλεύοντος <sup>198</sup> Τισσαφέρ-  
<sup>1050, 4 d</sup> νους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις  
<sup>789</sup> Τισσαφέρνους, <sup>584, 4</sup> τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε  
<sup>851 & 500, 1 & 2</sup> δ' ἀφ-εστήκεσαν <sup>758</sup> πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου.

### 399. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Accordingly I was making my levy thus (as previously described, οὕτως).

2. Accordingly we will make our levy as-follows (ὥδε).

3. I will send-orders to the garrison-commanders of the garrisons, which I have in the cities.

4. Enlist (lit. take) men of-the-Peloponnesus as many as possible, for these are the bravest (lit. best) soldiers.

5. Tissaphernes plots against the Greek cities.

6. Since Tissaphernes plots against the Greek cities (gen. absol.), it-will-be-possible to enlist Peloponnesian men against him.

7. The King of the Persians anciently gave the Ionian cities to Tissaphernes, his satrap.

8. But, at this time, these cities had revolted to Cyrus.

### 400. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Let us make a levy for Cyrus. Let us make a levy for ourselves.

2. I have many garrisons in this city.

3. Having enlisted as many soldiers as possible, come.

---

<sup>1</sup> ὥς, "on the ground that."

4. The Ionian cities are not willing to remain in the-power-of Tissaphernes.

5. Accordingly they all revolt, except one.

6. Let us send-orders to our garrison-commanders to enlist Peloponnesians alone.

## LESSON LXXIII.

Review Grammar Lesson: §§ 435, 439, 440 (Formation of Second Aorist, common and  $\mu$ -form); 323, 324 (Inflection of pres. and imperf. indic. of contracts in  $-άω$  and  $-έω$ ).

### 401. VOCABULARY.

ἐκ-βάλλω	<i>cast out, banish</i>
ἐκ-πίπτω	<i>fall out of; hence, be deprived of, be exiled, often serves as passive of ἐκβάλλω</i>
ἐπιβουλή	<i>plot</i>
κατ-άγω	<i>restore, re-instate, lit. lead down</i>
Μιλήσιος 3	<i>Milesian, inhabitant of Miletus</i>
προ-αισθάνομαι	<i>perceive beforehand</i>
πρόφασις, -εως, ἡ	<i>pretext</i>
πειράομαι (dep.)	<i>try</i>

402. [*The cruelty of Tissaphernes toward the Milesians turns to the advantage of Cyrus.*]

Ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνῃς προ-αισθόμενος τὰ  
265 ad fin., 716 b 982 885, 988  
 αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀπο-στήναι πρὸς Κῦρον,  
654 519, 4 654 518, 4  
 τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπ-έκτεινε τοὺς δὲ ἐξ-έβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
966 508, 19 a  
 ὑπο-λαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλ-λέξας στρατεύμα ἐπο-



<sup>104</sup>  
 λóρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν καὶ  
<sup>508, 6</sup> <sup>244, 506, 4, 820</sup> <sup>272</sup>  
 ἐπειράτο κατ-άγειν τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὐ  
<sup>768</sup> <sup>959</sup>  
 ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.

#### 403. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Tissaphernes perceived the plot in Miletus.
2. Tissaphernes perceived the Milesians plotting.
3. Tissaphernes perceived that the Milesians were plotting.
4. The Milesians were plotting to revolt to Cyrus.
5. Tissaphernes killed many of the Milesians, and cast the rest out of the city.
6. I will take-under-my-protection these fugitives, said Cyrus, and will besiege Miletus, and will restore the fugitives.
7. Let us besiege Miletus by land and by sea.

#### 404. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. He perceives me plotting. I perceive him plotting. They perceive that I will be plotting.
2. I will revolt to Cyrus.
3. He will cast us out of the city.
4. We were besieging Miletus.
5. I will try to take-under-my-protection the fugitives.
6. I have many pretexts. He had many pretexts. The fugitives will have many pretexts.

## LESSON LXXIV.

Review Grammar Lesson : §§ 468 (Formation of First Aorist Passive),  
325 (Inflection of pres. and imperf. indic. of contracts in -έω).

## 405. VOCABULARY.

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος 3)	deem worthy, claim
ἀπο-πέμπω	send back
ἄχθομαι	be burdened, be vexed
δαπανάω	spend money
δασμός	tribute
οὐδέν, ntr. of οὐδεῖς	in no respect, not at all
συν-πράττω	co-operate with

406. [*The plot progresses, aided by Parysatis. The king believes that Cyrus and Tissaphernes are wearing each other out in mutual hostility.*]

πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾱ <sup>968</sup>πέμπων ἡξίου, ἀδελφὸς <sup>969 b</sup>ὢν αὐτοῦ,  
<sup>584, 4, 948</sup>δοθῆναι <sup>261</sup>οἱ ταύτα<sup>ς</sup> τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην  
<sup>508, 7</sup>ἄρχειν <sup>741</sup>αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ <sup>514, 6</sup>συν-έπραττεν <sup>775</sup>αὐτῷ <sup>716 b</sup>ταῦτα.  
<sup>660 c</sup>ὥστε βασιλεὺς τῆς μὲν πρὸς <sup>266</sup>ἑαυτὸν <sup>742</sup>ἐπιβουλῆς οὐκ  
<sup>522, 1, 927</sup>ἠσθάνετο, <sup>772</sup>Τισσαφέρνει δὲ <sup>969 a</sup>ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν  
<sup>744</sup>ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα <sup>719 b</sup>δαπανᾶν. <sup>927</sup>ὥστε οὐδέν <sup>995</sup>ἤχθετο  
<sup>965</sup>αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος <sup>984</sup>ἀπ-έπεμπε τοὺς  
<sup>668</sup>γυγνομένους <sup>523, 9</sup>δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ <sup>984</sup>ἐκ τῶν πόλεων <sup>995</sup>ὧν ὁ  
<sup>668</sup>Τισσαφέρνης <sup>523, 9</sup>ἐ-τύγγανεν <sup>984</sup>ἔχων.

## 407. RECOMPOSITION.

1. As I am your brother (being your brother) I deem-it-right to have the Ionian cities.

2. I deem it not right that Tissaphernes should have them (lit. Tissaphernes to have them).

3. The cities were given to Cyrus.

4. Parysatis co-operated with Cyrus, so that the cities were given to him.

5. I expend money fighting with the king.

6. My enemies consider that I am spending money fighting with the king.

7. I consider that Cyrus is spending money in fighting with the king.

8. I am not at all troubled at the plot of Cyrus.

#### 408. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Tissaphernes rules the Ionian cities.

2. Cyrus claims to rule the Ionian cities.

3. The Ionian cities were given of old to Tissaphernes by the king.

4. Great revenues accrue from the Ionian cities.

5. Cyrus sends the accruing revenues from the cities which Tissaphernes has.

6. Cyrus happens to have many cities.

7. My mother happens to co-operate with me.

8. I happen to have no revenues.

### LESSON LXXV.

Grammar: §§ 766, 767 (Dat. of Advantage or Disadvantage); 772 (Dat. of Association and Opposition).

#### 409. VOCABULARY.

\**Ἀβύδος*

*Abȳdus*, town on the south shore of the Dardanelles

*ἀγαμᾶι* (dep.)

*admire*

αὖ (adv.)	<i>on the other hand, again</i>
δαρειακός	<i>daric, Persian gold coin = about \$5</i>
ἐκών, -ούσα, -όν, decl. like λύων	<i>willing, usually translated as adv., willingly</i>
Ἑλλήσποντος	<i>Hellespont, Dardanelles</i>
Ἑλλησποντιακός 3	<i>Hellespontian, lying along the Hellespont</i>
Θρᾷξ, -κός, ὁ	<i>Thracian</i>
καταντιπέρας (adv. governs gen.)	<i>opposite</i>
μύριοι 3	<i>ten thousand</i>
οἰκέω	<i>dwelt</i>
ὀρμάω	<i>urge, rush; midd. often start from</i>
συν-γίγνομαι	<i>come to be with, get acquainted with</i>
συν-βάλλω	<i>throw together; midd. often contribute</i>
τρέφω	<i>nourish, foster, maintain</i>
τροφή	<i>maintenance, support</i>
ὑπέρ	<i>beyond (Lat. super)</i>
Χερρόνησος	<i>Cherronēsus or Chersonesus, peninsula north of the Hellespont</i>
χρυσίον	<i>gold-coin, money</i>

410. [*The first contingent of the ten thousand is raised under Clearchus.*]

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συν-ελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ,  
τῇ καταντιπέρας <sup>757</sup> Ἀβύδου, <sup>719 a</sup> τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος  
Λακεδαιμόνιος <sup>775</sup> φυγὰς <sup>968</sup> ἦν· τούτῳ <sup>585, 4</sup> συν-γενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος  
<sup>968</sup> ἡγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μῦρλους δαρειακούς.  
ὁ δὲ <sup>772</sup> λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν ἀπὸ τού-  
των τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐ-πολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὀρμώ-  
μενος τοῖς Θρᾷξι τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ

ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συν-  
<sup>927</sup>εβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ  
<sup>619</sup>Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω  
<sup>508, 29, 984</sup>τρεφόμενον ἐ-λάνθανεν αὐτῷ <sup>767</sup>τὸ στράτευμα.

#### 411. RECOMPOSITION.

1. I will collect another army in the following manner.

2. I will give ten thousand darics to Clearchus, a Lacedaemonian fugitive.

3. He will collect an army with these moneys.

4. Making-his-headquarters-in the Chersonesus (lit. "starting from Chersonesus"), he both wages war upon the Thracians and helps the Greeks.

5. The Greeks accordingly (οὖν) contribute money for his support, and thus this army is secretly maintained for Cyrus.

6. We will contribute-of-our-resources (midd. voice expresses the idea "of our resources") for the support of Clearchus's army.

7. Our army will be secretly maintained.

8. Let us help the Greeks.

#### 412. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Another army is collected.

2. Cyrus admires Clearchus.

3. I make-my-headquarters-in (lit. "start from") Chersonesus.

4. The Chersonesus lies (κεῖται) beyond the Hellespont.

5. The Thracians live beyond the Hellespont.

6. I war with the Thracians dwelling beyond the Hellespont.

7. I help the Greeks by warring with the Thracians dwelling beyond the Hellespont.

8. We will help the Greeks by warring with the Thracians dwelling beyond the Hellespont.

---

## LESSON LXXVI.

Grammar: §§ 857, 1, 2 with *a*, 859, 860 (The Adverb *ἄν* with the Optative and the Subjunctive).

**413. RULE.**—The optative is used with *ἄν* as a less positive expression for the future [872] (or present) indicative, and is translated with *may, might, can, could, would, should*. (This is called the Potential Optative.) Thus: περιγενοίμην ἄν or περιγυγνοίμην ἄν *I can (could, should) become superior*.

## 414. VOCABULARY.

ἀντιστασιώτης	<i>political opponent</i>
κατα-λύω	<i>loose and let down, destroy, dissolve; with πόλεμον understood, end hostilities, come to terms</i>
οἶκοι (adv.)	<i>at home</i>
περι-γίγνομαι (dep.)	<i>become superior</i>
πιέζω	<i>press</i>
πρόσθεν (adv.)	<i>before</i>
συμ-βουλεύω	<i>counsel, give counsel</i>
συμ-βουλεύομαι	<i>get counsel, take counsel</i>

**415.** [*A second contingent of the ten thousand is raised by Aristippus, in Thessaly.*]

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὧν ἐ-τύγχανεν  
 αὐτῷ καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν  
 ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους  
 ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὥς οὕτω περι-γενόμενος  
 ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς  
 τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ  
 μὴ πρόσθεν κατα-λύσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς πρὶν  
 ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευῇται. οὕτω δ' αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ  
 ἐ-λάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

#### 416. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Aristippus happens to be my friend.
2. Aristippus happens to be in Thessaly.
3. Many soldiers happened at this time to be in Thessaly.
4. Aristippus happened to - be - pressed - hard by (political) opponents.
5. I will go to Cyrus and ask for (lit. "having gone to Cyrus I will ask for") two thousand hired soldiers.
6. Thus I become superior to my opponents. Thus I shall become superior to my opponents. Thus I should become superior to my opponents.
7. Do not come-to-terms with your opponents before conferring with me (lit. "you have conferred," πρὶν ἂν, w. aor. subj. midd.).
8. I beg you (δέομαί σου) to give me as-many-as (εἰς) two thousand hired-soldiers.

## 417. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Political-opponents at home press Aristippus.
2. Aristippus takes-counsel with Cyrus.
3. Cyrus asked Aristippus to confer with him.
4. A second army was secretly supported in Thes-saly.
5. I will give the mercenaries three months' pay.
6. Aristippus can-become-superior-to his oppo-nents.

## LESSON LXXVII.

Grammar: § 978 (Force of Particle *ὥς*, "as," "as if," when joined with a Participle).

## 418. VOCABULARY.

Ἀχαιοί 3	<i>Achaian</i> , of Achaia
Βοιωτίος 3	<i>Bœotian</i> , of Bœotia
Πισίδαι	<i>Pisidians</i> , of Pisidia, a mountainous district in Southern Asia Minor
παρα-γίγνομαι	<i>become present, report for duty</i>
πράγματα παρέχω	<i>furnish trouble</i>
στρατεύομαι (dep.)	<i>make expedition, take the field</i>
Σοφαίνετος	<i>Sophaenetus</i> , one of Cyrus's generals
Στυμφάλιος 3	<i>Stymphalian</i> , of Stymphālus, mountainous district in Northern Arcadia

419. [*A third contingent is raised by Proxenus; and a fourth, by Sophaenetus and Socrates.*]

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον, <sup>614</sup> ξένον <sup>766</sup> ὄντα αὐτῷ, ἐκέλευσε  
<sup>968 b</sup> λαβόντα <sup>978</sup> ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παρα-γενέσθαι, ὥς εἰς  
<sup>969 b</sup> Πισιδᾶς <sup>978</sup> βουλόμενος <sup>970</sup> στρατεύεσθαι, ὥς <sup>978</sup> πράγματα παρ-  
 εχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνετον δὲ



τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιοῦν, <sup>614</sup> ξένους ὄντας  
καὶ <sup>628</sup> τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν <sup>589, 2</sup> ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι  
<sup>969 b</sup> πλείστους, ὥς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι  
τῶν Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

#### 420. RECOMPOSITION.

1. Proxenus the Bœotian happened (2 aor.) to be a guest-friend of Cyrus.

2. And the same Proxenus also was an old (ἀρχαῖος) friend of Xenophon.

3. Proxenus took as many men as possible from Bœotia and reported-for-duty (having taken reported).

4. Cyrus said: I wish to make-an-expedition against the Pisidians.

5. Cyrus, wishing to make an expedition against the Pisidians, commanded Proxenus to report for duty.

6. Cyrus said that he wished to make-an-expedition against the Pisidians.

7. On-the-ground-that (ὥς) he wished to-make-an-expedition against the Pisidians, Cyrus commanded Proxenus to report-for-duty.

8. Cyrus will wage-war-with Tissaphernes with (the help of) the exiles of the Milesians.

#### 421. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. Take men and report-for-duty (παρα-γενοῦ).

2. The Pisidians cause-trouble-to my country.

3. I command Proxenus to report-for-duty because the Pisidians trouble my country.

4. I took-under-my-protection (ὑπο-λαμβάνω, 2 aor.) the exiles of the Milesians.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

Grammar: §§ 468, 473, 474, 322 (Formation and Inflection of Second Aor. and Fut. Pass.)

## 422. VOCABULARY.

ἀκρόπολις, -εως, ἡ	citadel
ἄνω (adv.)	up; of march from sea-coast to interior, inland
ξενικόν	mercenary force
πλήν (prep. w. gen. and conj.)	except
παντάπᾳσι (adv.)	altogether, utterly
προ-ίστημι	(1) trans. set before, put in command, (2) intrans. stand before, command
συν-αλλάττω	exchange; in pass. often become reconciled

423. [The contingents are called together, nominally to take part in an expedition against the Pisidians.]

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐ-δόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρό-  
<sup>818</sup> φασιν ἐ-ποιεῖτο <sup>978</sup> ὡς Πισιδᾶς <sup>518, 4</sup> βουλόμενος ἐκ-βαλεῖν παντᾶ-  
<sup>818</sup> πασι ἐκ τῆς <sup>978</sup> χώρᾳς· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό-  
<sup>818</sup> τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παρ-  
<sup>941</sup> αγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἥκειν <sup>768</sup> ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ  
<sup>514, 1</sup> στράτευμα καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συν-αλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς  
<sup>508, 16</sup> οἴκοι ἀπο-πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν δ' εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ  
<sup>767</sup> Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, <sup>500, 851, 858 a</sup> ὃς αὐτῷ προ-ειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς  
<sup>741</sup> πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παρ-αγγέλλει λαβόντι τοὺς ἄνδρας  
<sup>514, 11, 952.</sup> πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν.

**424. RECOMPOSITION.**

1. It seemed-best (aor.) to Cyrus now to proceed into-the-interior.

2. I will expel the Pisidians from their country.

3. I wish to expel the Pisidians from their country.

4. Since I wish (wishing) to expel the Pisidians, I will assemble both the barbarian and Greek (force).

5. On-the-ground-of (ὥς) wishing to expel the Pisidians, Cyrus assembled both the barbarian and Greek force.

6. Clearchus took his army and came (having taken came).

7. Aristippus having-become-reconciled-with (συν-αλλαγείς) his political opponents, sent his soldiers to Cyrus.

8. Xenias kept (κατ-εἶχεν) enough men to guard the citadels; the rest he sent to Cyrus.

**425. ORAL EXERCISE.**

1. I decide to proceed into the interior.

2. I decided, you decided, he decided; I will decide, you will decide, he will decide to guard the citadels.

3. I was-reconciled to my political opponents at home.

4. I sent-orders (aor.) to Xenias to come.

5. I will take as large an army as I have and come.

6. The political opponents at home will be reconciled (συν-αλλαγήσονται) to Aristippus.

## LESSON LXXIX.

Grammar: §§ 288, 290 (Cardinal Numbers); 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 402 (Formation of Present-Stem. Find illustrations of Classes I, II, IV, V, in the Greek passage below).

## 426. VOCABULARY.

γυμνής, -ήτος, ὁ (γυμνός 3)	<i>light-armed soldier</i>
ἡδέως, adv. from ἡδύς 3	<i>gladly, lit. sweetly</i>
καλέω	<i>call, summon</i>
καλῶς, adv. from καλός 3	<i>well, lit. beautifully</i>
κατα-πράττω	<i>do completely, accomplish</i>
οἴκαδε (adv.)	<i>homeward</i>
παύομαι	<i>cease</i>
πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α	<i>five hundred</i>
πιστεύω	<i>trust</i>
πρόσθεν (adv.)	<i>sooner</i>
πρίν (conj.)	<i>before</i>
τετρακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α	<i>four thousand</i>
τριᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α	<i>three hundred</i>

427. [*The besiegers of Miletus and those who had been exiled from that city are also summoned, and all make their rendezvous at Sardis.*]

<sup>504, 5</sup> Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μιλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ  
<sup>505, 18</sup> τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑπο-  
<sup>524, 5</sup> σχόμενος <sup>514, 6</sup> αὐτοῖς εἰ καλῶς κατα-πράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύ-  
<sup>1024, ad fin.</sup> ετο, <sup>955 a</sup> μὴ <sup>955</sup> πρόσθεν <sup>508, 6, 921</sup> παύσεσθαι <sup>511, 8</sup> πρὶν αὐτοὺς <sup>478, 891 b</sup> κατ-αγάγοι  
<sup>217</sup> οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο—ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ—  
καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρ-ῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

Ξένιας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβών, <sup>963 b</sup> ὀπλίτᾱς <sup>628</sup>  
εἰς τετρακισχίλους, παρ-εγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις.

Πρόξενος δὲ παρ-ἦν <sup>968 b</sup> ἔχων ὀπλίτᾱς μὲν εἰς πεντακοσί-  
ους καὶ χίλους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους.

Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτᾱς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσι-  
ους παρ-εγένετο.

Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς εἰς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτᾱς  
τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρ-εγένετο· <sup>607</sup> ἦν δὲ καὶ  
οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευο-  
<sup>729 e</sup> μένων.

#### 428. RECOMPOSITION.

1. The besiegers of (those besieging) Miletus are also invited.

2. I promise you, (the) fugitives, says Cyrus, not to stop before (πρὶν ἄν) I restore you to-your-homes (οἴκαδε).

3. All the fugitives reported (were present) at Sardis, for they trusted Cyrus.

4. The soldiers from the cities reported with Xenias.

5. Proxenus led not only hoplites but also light-armed-soldiers.

6. Most (οἱ πολλοί) of Cyrus's soldiers were collected from Peloponnesus.

#### 429. ORAL EXERCISE.

1. The fugitives take-the-field with Cyrus.

2. I will not cease until I restore the fugitives.

3. They will not cease until they restore the fugitives.
4. We gladly obey Cyrus, for we trust him.
5. The men from all the cities reported at Sardis.
6. Let us restore the fugitives to-their-homes.

---

## LESSON LXXX.

Grammar: §§ 248, 249, 251 (a), 253 (Comparison of Adj.); 398, 399, 400, 402, 403, 404, 539 (Formation of Present-Stem. Find illustrations of Classes IV, V, VII, VIII, in the Greek passage below).

### 430. VOCABULARY.

ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι	<i>make counter-preparations</i>
εἶρηκα	<i>I have said, I have mentioned</i>
ἐπ-ειμι	<i>be upon, be over</i>
ἡγέομαι	<i>(1) lead, (2) consider</i>
κατα-νοέω	<i>take note of</i>
Κολοσσαί	<i>Colossae</i>
Λυδία	<i>Lydia, division of Asia Minor</i>
Μαίανδρος	<i>Maeander</i>
παρασκευή	<i>preparation</i>
στόλος	<i>armament</i>
ὥς (prep. w. acc. ; used only w. persons)	<i>to</i>

**431.** [*Tissaphernes discovers Cyrus's purpose and gives the alarm to the king ; Cyrus, having completed his preparations, sets out from Sardis and proceeds eastward as far as Colossae.*]

Οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφ-έκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης  
<sup>236</sup>  
 δέ, κατα-νοήσας ταῦτα καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἡ  
<sup>978</sup> <sup>772 a</sup>  
 ὥς ἐπὶ Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέᾳ

<sup>651</sup> ἢ <sup>289</sup> ἐδύνατο <sup>507, 1</sup> τάχιστα ἰππέας ἔχων ὥς πεντακοσίους· καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντι-παρ-εσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς <sup>589, 8</sup> εἶρηκα <sup>828</sup> ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ <sup>720</sup> ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας <sup>628</sup> εἴκοσι καὶ δύο, ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου μὲν <sup>191</sup> τὸ εὖρος <sup>189 d</sup> δύο πλέθρα, γέφυρα δὲ <sup>865, 528, 5</sup> ἐπ-ῆν ἐ-ζευγμένη <sup>776</sup> πλοίοις <sup>519, 7</sup> ἑπτά· τούτον δια-βὰς <sup>290</sup> ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμὸν <sup>247</sup> ἓνα, παρασάγγας ὀκτώ, εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην.

#### 432. RECOMPOSITION.

1. The preparation of Cyrus was said to be against the Pisidians.

2. The preparation of Cyrus seemed to be great.

3. Tissaphernes thought the preparation to be greater than as-if (ὥς) against the Pisidians.

4. Accordingly he proceeds to the king with five hundred horsemen and tells his suspicions.

5. The king thus heard of Cyrus's armament.

6. The king, having heard of Cyrus's armament, was afraid (ἐφοβεῖτο).

7. It seemed best to the king, having heard of Cyrus's armament, to make counter-preparations.

8. Cyrus sets out from Sardis with (ἔχων) the generals and soldiers whom I have mentioned.

9. Let us cross the bridge and proceed (having crossed the bridge let us proceed) into Colossae.

## APPENDIX A.

### ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ

### ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΕΩΣ

### ΒΙΒΛΙΟΝ ΠΡΩΤΟΝ.

---

#### CAPUT PRIMUM.

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρεῖος καὶ ὑπ-ώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὸν παῖδα ἀμφοτέρῳ παρ-εῖναι.

2. Ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρ-ὼν ἐ-τύγχανεν. Κῦρον δὲ μετα-πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐ-ποίησε· καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπ-έδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδλίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀν-έβη τριᾶκοσλους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

3. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐ-τελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατ-έστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης δια-βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται τε καὶ συλ-λαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀπο-κτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξ-αιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.



4. Ὁ δ' ὥς ἀπ-ῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμασθεις, βουλευέται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ', ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπ-ῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην.

5. Ὅστις δ' ἀφ-ῖκνείτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτόν, πάντας οὕτω δια-τιθεὶς ἀπ-επέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπ-εμελείτο, ὥς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ.

6. Τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἡθροίζεν ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. Ὡδε οὖν ἐ-ποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν· ὅπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὥς ἐπι-βουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφ-εστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλην Μιλήτου.

7. Ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης, προ-αισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀπο-στήναι πρὸς Κύρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπ-έκτεινε τοὺς δὲ ἐξ-έβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπο-λαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλ-λέξας στράτευμα ἐ-πο-λιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν καὶ ἐ-πειράτο κατ-άγειν τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.

8. Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἡξίου, ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ,

δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συν-έπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τῆς μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλῆς οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων· καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπ-έπεμπε τοὺς γυγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἐ-τύγγχανεν ἔχων.

9. Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συν-ελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ, τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου, τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγ-γενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μῦρλους δαρεικοὺς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐ-πολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὀρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συν-εβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐ-λάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

10. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὧν ἐ-τύγγχανεν αὐτῷ καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περι-γενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἑξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν κατα-λῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμ-βουλεύσῃται. οὕτω δ' αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐ-λάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

11. Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον, ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ, ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παρα-γενέσθαι, ὥς εἰς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὥς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὥς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

## CAPUT SECUNDUM.

1. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὥς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρᾳ· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὥς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συν-αλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ὑπο-πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προ-ειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἤκειν παρ-αγγέλλει λαβόντι τοὺς ἄνδρας πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν.

2. Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς εἰ καλῶς κατα-πράξειεν ἐφ' ᾗ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς κατ-αγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπείθοντο—ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ—καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα παρ-ῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

3. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβών, ὀπλί-  
 τᾱς εἰς τετρακισχίλους, παρ-εγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις. Πρό-  
 ξενος δὲ παρ-ῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτᾱς μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ  
 χίλους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους. Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ  
 Ἀχαιοὺς ὀπλίτᾱς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους παρ-εγένετο.  
 Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς εἰς τριᾱκοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτᾱς  
 τριᾱκοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρ-εγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ  
 οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατεuo-  
 μένων. Οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφ-ἴκοντο.

4. Τισσαφέρνης δέ, κατα-νοήσᾱς ταῦτα καὶ μείζονα  
 ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδᾱς τὴν παρασκευήν,  
 πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέᾳ ἢ ἐ-δύνατο τάχιστα ἱππέᾱς ἔχων  
 ὡς πεντακοσίους·

5. Καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσα-  
 φέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντι-παρ-εσκευάζετο. Κύρος  
 δὲ ἔχων οὐς εἴρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξ-ελαύνει  
 διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ  
 δύο, ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου μὲν τὸ εὖρος  
 δύο πλέθρα, γέφυρα δὲ ἐπ-ῆν ἐ-ζευγμένη πλοίοις ἑπτὰ·

6. Τοῦτον δια-βὰς ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίᾱς σταθμὸν  
 ἕνα, παρασάγγᾱς ὀκτώ, εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην,  
 εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην.

## APPENDIX B.

### *The most Important Rules of Greek Syntax.*

#### GENERAL RULES OF THE SENTENCE.

**1. (§ 601)** THE subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

REMARK.—The subject is often omitted: (1) when an unemphatic pronoun; (2) when implied by the connection.

**2. (§ 603)** A finite verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

REM. 1.—But (1) (§ 604) a neuter plural subject has its verb in the *singular*, and (2) (§ 609) a collective subject denoting persons may have its verb in the *plural*.

REM. 2.—(§ 611) The verbs *ἐστί* and *εἰστί* are often omitted.

**3. (§ 614)** A predicate-substantive must agree in *case* with the subject; a predicate-adjective must agree in *case, number, and gender*.

**4. (§ 620)** An adjective agrees with its noun in *case, number, and gender*.

REM.—(§ 621) The substantive to which an adjective belongs is often omitted; in this case, the adjective itself becomes a substantive.

**5. (§ 623)** The appositive agrees in *case* with its substantive.

**6. (§ 627)** The relative agrees with its antecedent only in *number and gender*; its *case* is determined by its own clause.

7. (§ 641) Adverbs are used to qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

8. (§ 643) The comparative degree may be followed by *ἢ than*, or by the genitive.

9. (§ 656) The article *ὁ, ἡ, τό* has two uses: *restrictive* (Engl. definite article) and *generic*.

REM. 1.—(§ 656 A) The article in the use which corresponds in the main with that of the definite article in English is called the Restrictive Article.

NOTE 1.—(§ 658) The Restrictive Article frequently takes the place of an unemphatic possessive pronoun and is translated by *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, etc.

NOTE 2.—(§ 663) Proper names, being individual in their character, do not require the article unless it is desired to mark them as previously mentioned or well-known.

REM. 2.—(§ 659 B) The Generic Article indicates that the noun to which it belongs designates a whole class. It must often be left untranslated in English.

10. (§ 666) The attributive adjective usually stands, as in English, between the article and the noun; the predicate adjective follows or precedes both article and noun.

REM.—(§ 673) Substantives with the intensive *αὐτός*, and with the demonstratives *ὁδε, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος*, require the article, and the pronoun takes the predicate position.

#### CASES.

11. (§ 706) The chief uses of the nominative are: as subject of a finite verb; as predicate nominative after the verbs *to be, to become*, and with the passive of verbs of *making, choosing, naming*.

12. (§ 709) The person (or thing) addressed is put in the vocative.

**13.** (§ 711) The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

**14.** (§ 715) The cognate-accusative repeats the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun.

**15.** (§ 718) The accusative is connected with verbs, adjectives, and substantives to specify the part or property to which they apply.

**16.** (§ 719) The accusative is used, in many words and phrases, with the force of an adverb.

**17.** (§ 720) The extent of time and space is put in the accusative.

**18.** (§ 723) There are two adverbs of swearing in Greek: *νῆ* *yes* by —, and *οὐ μά* *no* by —. Both are followed by the accusative.

**19.** (§ 724) Many transitive verbs may have a double object, usually a *person* and a *thing*, both in the accusative. Thus, verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, *clothing*, *hiding*, *depriving*, and others.

**20.** (§ 726) Verbs of *calling*, *choosing*, *considering*, *making*, *showing*, may take two accusatives referring to the same person.

REM.— (§ 725) Verbs signifying *to do anything to* or *to say anything of* a person, take two accusatives.

**21.** (§ 728) One substantive may have another depending on it in the genitive. This genitive, as depending on a noun, is sometimes called the adnominal genitive (*ad nomen*, lit. "to the noun"). It is also called the attributive genitive, because it limits the noun like an attributive adjective. It includes the following varieties :

- 1) Genitive of possession.
- 2) Genitive subjective (the genitive exerts, performs, is subject of, the action).
- 3) Genitive objective (the genitive receives, sustains, is object of, the action).
- 4) Genitive of measure.
- 5) Genitive partitive (or, more accurately, genitive of the whole) denoting the whole of which the other substantive is a part.
- 6) Genitive of material.
- 7) Genitive of designation (also called appositional genitive).

REM. 1.—(§ 730) The attributive genitive is often used depending upon the words *uíos son*, or *oĩkos (oĩkiā) house*, to be supplied.

REM. 2.—(§ 732) The genitive may take the place of a predicate-noun, or, more exactly, may depend upon a predicate-noun to be supplied. This predicate genitive may be of all the varieties mentioned in Rule 21.

**22.** (§§ 737, 738, 739, 740, 741). The genitive is used after verbs of *sharing*; *touching* and *beginning*; *aiming* and *attaining*; *enjoying*; *ruling* and *leading*.

**23.** (§ 742). The genitive is used after many verbs which signify an action of the *senses* or the *mind*, e. g., *hear*, *taste*, *smell*; *remember*, *forget*, *care for*, *desire*, *spare*.

**24.** (§ 743) The genitive is used with verbs of *plenty* and *want*.

**25.** (§§ 744, 745, 746) The genitive of *cause*, *crime*, *value*, is used after verbs of *emotion*, of *judicial action*, of *buying* and *selling*.

**26.** (§ 748) The genitive of separation is used after a great variety of verbs.



**27.** (§ 749) Verbs of *superiority* and *inferiority* take the genitive, because of the comparative idea which they contain (cf. Rule 28).

**28.** (§§ 752, 755) The genitive is used with adjectives which correspond, in derivation or meaning, to verbs that take the genitive. Specially frequent is the genitive after comparatives (cf. Rule 8).

**29.** (§§ 756, 757) Some adverbs take the genitive like the adjectives from which they are derived. The genitive is specially frequent with adverbs of place.

**30.** (§ 759) The genitive is used to denote the time to which an action belongs.

**31.** (§ 763) The indirect object of an action is put in the dative. The indirect object is indicated in English by *to*. It is used: (1) after transitive verbs, such as *giving, sending, saying, promising*; (2) after intransitive verbs, such as *seeming, yielding; pleasing, trusting, obeying; envying, favoring, threatening*.

**32.** (§ 767) The person or thing to whose advantage or disadvantage anything tends is put in the dative.

**33.** (§ 768) With *εἰμί, γίγνομαι*, the possessor is expressed by the dative.

**34.** (§ 769) With verbals in *-τέος*, and sometimes with the perfect and pluperfect tenses of the passive voice, the agent is expressed by the dative (instead of by *ὑπό* with the genitive, the usual construction).

**35.** (§§ 772, 773) The dative is used with verbs of *association* or *opposition*, and with adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

**36.** (§ 775) Many verbs compounded with *ἐν*, *σύν*, *ἐπί*, and some compounded with *πρός*, *παρά*, *περί*, *ὑπό*, take a dative depending upon the preposition.

**37.** (§ 776) The dative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument*, the *cause*, and the *manner*.

REM.—(§ 777) The verb *χράομαι* *use* (properly *serve myself*) takes the dative of means (as in Latin *utor* takes the ablative).

**38.** (§ 781) The dative of manner is used, especially with the *comparative*, to show the degree by which one thing differs from another.

**39.** (§ 782) The time in which is expressed by the dative. This rule applies to specific statements of *day*, *night*, *month*, *year*, which would always therefore be used with some specifying word, e. g., *on this day*, *on the following morning*.

**40.** (§ 789) Prepositions are used with different cases according to their meaning, thus:

With the Accusative only: *ἀνά*, *εἰς* (for *ὡς* see § 784 a).

With the Genitive only: *ἀντί*, *ἀπό*, *ἐκ* (*ἐξ*), *πρό*, and the adverbs or improper prepositions *ἄνευ*, *ἔνεκα*, *μέχρι*, *πλήν*.

With the Dative only: *ἐν*, *σύν*.

With the Accusative and Genitive: *ἀμφί*, *διά*, *κατά*, *μετά*, *ὑπέρ*.

With the Accusative, Genitive, and Dative: *ἐπί*, *παρά*, *περί*, *πρός*, *ὑπό*.

#### VOICES.

**41.** (§ 809) The active voice represents the subject as acting.

**42.** (§ 811) The middle voice represents the subject as acting upon himself, or, more exactly, as affected by his own action. It is of three kinds: (1) the *direct middle* (§ 812), which represents the subject as acting directly on himself; (2) (§ 813) the *indirect middle*, which represents the subject as acting *for* himself or on something *belonging to* himself; (3) (§ 814) the *subjective middle*, which represents the subject as acting with his own means and powers, and differs slightly from the active.

**43.** (§ 818) The passive voice represents the subject as acted on, or suffering an action.

#### TENSES.

**44.** (§ 822) The present and imperfect represent the action of the verb as *continued*; the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect as *completed*; the aorist and future as *indefinite*, that is, as simply *brought to pass*.

**45.** (§§ 823, 851) In the Indicative mode the tenses express time. Thus, the present and perfect indicative express *present* time; the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect indicative express *past* time; the *future* and future perfect indicative express *future* time. In the Subjunctive, Optative, Imperative, and Infinitive, however, the tenses do not of themselves designate time. The present in these modes indicates an action simply as *continued*; the aorist indicates an action simply as *brought to pass*; the perfect indicates an action simply as *completed*.

## MODES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

**46.** (§ 865) The Indicative express that which *is*, *was*, or *will be*. It is used when the reality of an action is affirmed, denied, or questioned: as, *he went*; *he did not stay*; *will he return*?

**47.** (§§ 866, 1, 2, 3) The Subjunctive has three common uses in simple sentences: (1) the first person is used to express a request or a proposal; (2) the first person is used in questions as to what may be done with *propriety* or *advantage* (subjunctive of deliberation); (3) the second and third persons are used with *μή* in prohibitions. This use is confined to the aorist.

**48.** (§§ 870, 872) The Optative has two uses in simple sentences: (1) the optative is used without *ἄν* to express a wish that something may happen; (2) the optative is used with *ἄν* as a less positive expression for the future (or present) indicative, and is translated by *may*, *might*, *would*, etc.

**49.** (§ 873) The Imperative represents the action as commanded.

**50.** (§ 874) Prohibitions, that is, negative commands, are expressed by *μή* with the *present imperative* or the *aorist subjunctive*. Cf. R. 47 (3).

## MODES IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

**51.** (§§ 880, 881, 885, 887) Final clauses are of three kinds: (1) clauses of pure purpose; (2) clauses with *ὅπως* after verbs of *effort*; (3) clauses with *μή* after verbs of fearing.

(1) Clauses of pure purpose are introduced by *ἵνα*, *ὥς*, *ὅπως* *that*, *in order that*, and *μή*, *ἵνα μή*, *ὥς*

*μή, ὅπως μή that not*; and take the subjunctive. But if the clause depends on a past tense the optative *may* be used instead of the subjunctive.

(2) After verbs which signify *attention, care, or effort*, the object of the endeavor is expressed by *ὅπως* or *ὅπως μή* with the future indicative.

(3) After verbs of *fearing* and kindred ideas, the object of the fear (thing feared) is expressed by *μή that* or *lest* or *μή οὐ that not, lest not*, with the subjunctive. After a past tense, the optative *may* be used instead of the subjunctive.

**52.** (§§ 891, 893, 895, 898, 900) Particular conditional sentences are arranged in four classes:

*First Class.*—The condition assumes something without judgment as to its reality.

We have then: in the condition, *εἰ* with present or past indicative;  
in the conclusion, any tense of the indicative.

*Second Class.*—The supposition is understood to be contrary to reality.

We have then: in the condition, *εἰ* with a past tense of the indicative;  
in the conclusion, a past tense of the indicative with *ἄν*.

*Third Class.*—The supposition relates to the future, and some expectation that it may be realized is implied.

We have then: in the condition, *εἰάν (ἤν, ἄν)* with the subjunctive (any tense);  
in the conclusion, the future indicative or the imperative.

*Fourth Class.*—The supposition relates to the future, but no expectation of its being realized is implied.

We have then : in the condition, *εἰ* with the optative (pres., aor., or perf.) ;  
in the conclusion, the optative with *ἄν* (pres., aor., or perf.).

**53.** (§ 894) There is a variety of conditional sentences called *general*. In these the *if* of the condition really means *whenever, as often as*. In general conditional sentences we have

For present time : in the condition, *ἐάν* with the subjunctive (any tense) ;  
in the conclusion, the present indicative.

For past time : in the condition, *εἰ* with the optative (pres., aor., or perf.) ;  
in the conclusion, the imperfect indicative.

**54.** (§ 525) Clauses of *cause* or *reason* are introduced by *ὅτι, διότι because, ὥς as, ἐπεὶ since*, and take the indicative. Clauses of *result* are introduced by *ὥστε so that*, and take the indicative if stress is laid upon the actual occurrence of the result, otherwise the infinitive.

#### MODES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**55.** (§§ 930, 932) There are in Greek two ways of making the indirect statement after verbs of saying and thinking : (1) by a clause introduced by *ὅτι* or *ὥς* ; (2) by the infinitive. If the clause with *ὅτι* or *ὥς* is employed, no change of mode from that which would have been used in the direct statement is ne-

cessary; but if the leading verb denotes *past* time, any indicative or subjunctive of the direct statement *may* be changed, in the indirect statement, to the optative of the same tense.

#### INFINITIVE.

**56.** (§§ 939, 940) The subject of the infinitive, when expressed, stands in the accusative case. It is not expressed when it is the same as the subject of the principal verb.

**57.** (§ 946) The Infinitive of Indirect Discourse is used as the object of verbs of saying and thinking, and represents an indicative (or optative) of direct discourse.

REM.—The negative with the infinitive of indirect discourse is οὐ.

**58.** (§§ 948, 949) The Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse is used as object especially with verbs which imply *power* or *fitness*, *feeling* or *purpose*, *effort* or *intention* to produce (or prevent) an action.

The Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse is used as subject chiefly with impersonal expressions like δοκεῖ *it seems good*, δεῖ, *it is necessary*, ἔστι *it is possible*, and the like.

REM.—The negative with the infinitive not in indirect discourse is μή

#### PARTICIPLE.

**59.** (§§ 968, 969, 970) 1) The circumstantial participle adds a circumstance connected with the action of the principal verb; it may imply *means*, *manner*, *cause*, *purpose*, *condition*, or *concession*.

2) The circumstantial participle may be joined with a genitive not immediately dependent on any word in the sentence. The noun and participle are then said to be in the *genitive absolute*.

REM.—The circumstantial participle is the equivalent of a dependent clause introduced by *when, while, since, in-order-that, if, although*.

**60.** (§§ 980, 981, 982, 983, 984) The supplementary participle is closely connected with the verb, and often contains the leading idea of the sentence. It is especially frequent in four connections:

- 1) With verbs of beginning, ceasing, continuing, and appearing;
- 2) With verbs of knowing and perceiving;
- 3) With verbs of enduring and feeling;
- 4) With *λανθάνω, τυγχάνω, φθάνω*.



## APPENDIX C.

### *Alphabetical List of Fifty Important Verbs.*

- 1 ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), IV, *announce*
- 2 αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-, αισθε-), V, *perceive*, 522, 1
- 3 ἀρπάζω (άρπαδ-), IV, *snatch*, 517, 1  
ἀφικνέομαι, see ἰκνέομαι
- 4 βαίνω (βαν-, βα-), IV, *go*, 519, 7
- 5 βάλλω (βαλ-), IV, *throw*, 518, 4
- 6 βούλομαι (βουλ-, βουλε-), I, *wish*, 510, 4
- 7 γίγνομαι (γεν-, γενε-), I, *become*, 506, 1
- 8 γιγνώσκω (γνο-), VI, *learn*, *know*, 531, 4
- 9 δείκνυμι (δεικ-), V, *point out*, 528, 3
- 10 δηλόω (δηλο-), I, *make clear*, 341
- 11 δίδωμι (δο-), VII, *give*, 534, 4
- 12 δύναμαι (δυνα-), VII, *can*, 535, 5  
εἶδον (φιδ-), VIII, *saw*, see ὁράω, 539, 4
- 13 εἶπον (φεπ-), VIII, *said*, 539, 8
- 14 εἰμί (εσ-), VII, *am*, 537, 1
- 15 ἐλαύνω (ελα-), V, *drive*, *march*, 521, 1
- 16 ἔρχομαι (ερχ-), VIII, *come*, *go*, 539, 2
- 17 εὕρισκω (εὕρ-, εὕρε-), VI, *find*, 533, 5
- 18 ἔχω ((σ)εχ-), I, *have*, 508, 16  
ἦλθον (ελθ-) *came*, see ἔρχομαι
- 19 θνήσκω (θαν-, θνα-), VI, *die*, 530, 4
- 20 ἔημι (έ-), VII, *send*, 534, 3
- 21 ἰκνέομαι (ικ-), V, *come*, 524, 2
- 22 ἵστημι (στα-), VII, *set*, 534, 5

- 23 κτείνω (κτεν-), IV, *kill*, 519, 4
- 24 λαμβάνω (λαβ-), V, *take*, 523, 5
- 25 λανθάνω (λαθ-), V, *lie hid*, 523, 6
- 26 λέγω (λεγ-), I, *say, speak*, 508, 19 b
- 27 λείπω (λιπ-), II, *leave*, 511, 7
- 28 λύω (λυ-), I, *loose*, 504, 3
- 29 μανθάνω (μαθ-, μαθε-), V, *learn*, 523, 7
- 30 μάχομαι (μαχ-, μαχε-), I, *fight*, 510, 11
- 31 μένω (μεν-, μενε-), I, *remain*, 510, 14
- 32 οἶμαι (also οἶμαι (οι-, οιε-), I, *think*, 510, 16
- 33 ὀλλύμι (ολ-, ολε-), V, *destroy*, 528, 8
- 34 ὀράω (όρα-), VIII, *see*, 539, 4
- 35 πάσχω (παθ-, πενθ-), VI, *suffer*, 533, 11
- 36 παύω (παυ-), I, *make cease*, 505, 17
- 37 πείθω (πιθ-), II, *persuade*, 511, 8
- 38 ῥίπτω (ῥιφ-), III, *throw*, 513, 13
- 39 στέλλω (στελ-), IV, *send*, 518, 17
- 40 σάζω (σω-, σφδ-), IV, *save*, 517, 5
- 41 τελέω (τελε-), I, *finish*, 503, 14
- 42 τίθημι (θε-), VII, *put*, 534, 1
- 43 τίκτω (τεκ-), I, *bring forth, beget*, 506, 5
- 44 τιμάω (τιμα-), I, *honor*
- 45 τρέφω (τρεφ-, θρεπ-), I, *nourish*, 508, 29
- 46 τυγχάνω (τυχ-), V, *happen*, 523, 9
- 47 φαίνω (φαν-), IV, *show*, 518, 19
- 48 φέρω (φερ-), VIII, *bear*, 539, 6
- 49 φεύγω (φυγ-), II, *flee*, 511, 15
- 50 φυλάττω (φυλακ-), IV, *guard*, 514, 11

NOTE.—The above list contains the most important verbs that have been given in the Greek Lessons. These verbs are brought together here for practice upon the principal parts and upon the formation of the tense-stems. The *theme*, the *class*, and the *meaning* of each verb are given in the list; the *principal parts* will be found in the grammar as indicated by the reference.

## GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

### Α

αἰρά, nurse  
 Ἀβύδος, *Abydos*, town on S. shore  
 of Dardanelles  
 ἀγαθός (3), good, brave  
 ἀγαμαι (dep.), admire  
 ἀγαπάω, love  
 ἀγγελία, message, tidings  
 ἀγγελος, messenger  
 ἀγγέλλω, announce  
 Ἀγγλία, *England*  
 ἄγω, lead  
 ἀγών, -ῶνος, δ, contest, game  
 ἀγωνίζω, contend in contest  
 ἀδελφή, sister  
 ἀδελφός, brother  
 ἀδικέω, do wrong.  
 αἰί, always, ever  
 Ἀθηνᾶ, *Athena*, goddess of Athens  
 Ἀθῆναι, *Athens*  
 ἀθλητής, athlete  
 ἀθλον, prize  
 ἀθλος, contest  
 ἀθροίζω, gather, collect, assemble  
 ἀθυμία, despondency

Ἅιδης, *Hades*, (1) god of lower  
 world, (2) lower world  
 Αἰθίοψ, -οπος, δ, *Æthiopian*  
 αἷμα, -ατος, τό, blood  
 αἶξ, αἰγός, δ and ἡ, goat  
 αἶρω, lift  
 αἰσθάνομαι, perceive (obj. in gen.)  
 αἰτέω, ask  
 αἰών, -ῶνος, δ, age  
 Ἀκαδήμεια, *Academy*, locality, with  
 gymnasium, in suburbs of Ath-  
 ens. Here Plato taught  
 ἀκολουθέω, follow (governs dative)  
 ἀκούω, hear  
 ἀκριβής (2), exact  
 ἀκριβῶς, exactly  
 ἄκρον, height, summit  
 ἀκρόπολις, -εως, ἡ, citadel  
 ἄκρος (3), at the end or top  
 ἀλήθεια, truth  
 ἀλλά (ἀλλ'), but  
 ἄλλομαι (dep.), leap (Lat. salio)  
 ἄλλος (3), other  
 ἄλμα, -τος, τό, leaping  
 ἄλυπος (2), without grief

<sup>1</sup> In this vocabulary the gender of nouns is not ordinarily indicated, if of the first or second declension.

ἅμα, *at the same time*

ἄμαξα, *wagon*

Ἀμερική, *America*

ἄμπελος, ἡ, *vine*

ἀμύνω, *ward off*

ἀμφί, *about*

ἀμφότερος (3), *both*

ἀνα-βαίνω, *go up, ascend*

ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *ascent*

ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, *read*

ἀνάγκη, *necessity*

ἀνα-λαμβάνω, *take up*

ἀνάλυσις, -εως, ἡ, *loosing, dissolving*

ἀναρίθμητος (2), *innumerable*

ἀνα-τίθημι, *dedicate*

ἀνατολή, *east, Orient, lit. rising (of sun)*

Ἀνδρέας, *Andrew*

ἀνδρείος (3), *brave*

ἀν-έκ-δοτος (2), *inedited, unpublished*

ἀνευ, *without*

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ, *man (Lat. vir)*

ἄνθρωπος, *man*

ἀν-ίστημι, *make rise up, intrans. rise*

ἀν-οίγνυμι, *open*

ἀνόμημα, -ατος, τό, *transgression, lit. illegality*

ἀντί, *instead of, w. gen.*

ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζω, *make counter-preparations*

ἀντιστασιώτης, *political opponent*

ἄνω, *up, often of march from coast to interior, inland*

ἄξιος (3), *worthy*

ἀξιόω, (1) *deem worthy*, (2) *claim*

ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *report*

ἀπαράσκευος (2), *unprepared*

ἀπιστέω, *distrust (governs dative)*

ἁπλοῦς (3), *simple*

ἀπό, *from, away from*

ἀπο-βαίνω, *go away, depart*

ἀπο-δείκνυμι, *show forth, appoint*

ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back*

ἀπο-θνήσκω, *die*

ἀπό-κειμαι, *lie away, be laid up*

ἀπο-κρίνομαι (dep.), *reply, answer*

ἀπο-κτείνω, *kill*

ἀπο-λείπω, *desert*

ἀπόλεκτος (2), *selected*

ἀπ-όλλυμι, *destroy*

Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, ὁ, *Apollo, god of music and song*

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send back*

ἀπόστολος, *apostle*

ἀπο-τίθημι, *put away*

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show forth*

ἀπο-φαίνομαι γνώμην, *declare my opinion*

ἄργυρος, *silver*

ἀργυροῦς (3), *of silver*

ἀρετή, *virtue, worth*

Ἄρης, -εως, ὁ, *Ares, god of war (Lat. Mars)*

Ἀριαῖος, *Ariæus, commander of barbarians under Cyrus*

Ἀρκάς, -άδος, ὁ, *Arcadian*

ἀρπάζω, *seize*

ἄρρην (2), *male*

Ἀρταξέρξης, *Artaxerxes, king of Persia*

Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, ἡ, *Artemis, sister of Apollo (Lat. Diana)*

ἄρτος, *loaf of bread, bread*

ἀρχαῖον, τό, *anciently*

ἀρχαῖος (3) *ancient*

ἀρχή, *beginning, rule, province*

Ἀρχιμανδρίτης, *Archimandrite, title of Greek preaching monks*

ἄρχω, *begin, rule*

ἄρχων, -ωντος, ὁ, ruler  
 ἀσθενέω, be sick  
 ἀσθενής (2), sick  
 ἀσκέω, practice  
 ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ, practice  
 ἀσκός, wine skin  
 ἀσπάζομαι (dep.), greet  
 ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, shield  
 ἀστεῖος (3), bright, lively  
 ἀσφαλτόπισσα, pitch  
 ἀτιμάζω, disgrace  
 ἀδ (adv.), on the other hand, again  
 ἀντίκα, forthwith  
 αὐτός (3), self, in oblique cases him,  
 her, it  
 ἀφανής (2), out of sight  
 ἀφ-ίημι, send away, dismiss  
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι (dep.), arrive  
 ἀφ-ίσταμαι (dir. midd.), revolt  
 ἀφ-ίστημι, set off  
 Ἀχαιός (3), Achaian, of Achaia  
 ἄχθομαι, be burdened, be vexed  
 Ἀχιλλεύς, -εως, Achilles

## B

Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ἡ, Babylon  
 βαθύς (3), deep  
 βαίνω, step  
 βάλανος, ἡ, καύ, acorn, date  
 βάλλω, throw  
 βάρβαρος (2), barbarian (adj. & sub.)  
 βάρος, -ους, τό, weight  
 βαρύς (3), heavy, deep  
 βασιλεία, kingdom  
 βασίλεια, τὰ, palace  
 βασίλειος (2), royal  
 βασιλεύς, -εως, ὁ, king  
 βασιλεύω, rule, reign  
 βιβλίον, book  
 βίος, life  
 βοήθεια, aid

Βοιωτία, Boeotia, an interior division of Greece  
 Βοιωτίος (3), Boeotian, of Boeotia  
 βουλευόμαι (indir. midd.), deliberate  
 βουλεύω, plan  
 βουλή, (1) will, counsel, (2) council  
 βούλομαι (dep.), wish  
 βραδύς (3), slow  
 βραχύς (3), short

## Γ

γάλα, -ακτος, τό, milk  
 γάρ, for  
 γαστήρ, -τρός, ὁ, stomach  
 γένος, γένους, τό, race, kin  
 γέρας, γέρως, τό, gift of honor  
 γέρον, -οντος, ὁ, old man  
 γέφυρα, bridge  
 γεωργός, farmer, lit. earth-worker  
 γῆ, earth  
 γῆρας, γήρως, τό, old age  
 γιγᾶς, -αντος, ὁ, giant  
 γίγνομαι (dep.), become  
 γιγνώσκω, learn to know, recognize  
 γλυκύς (3), sweet  
 γλῶσσα, tongue  
 γνώμη, opinion  
 γονεύς, -έως, ὁ, sire, progenitor;  
 pl. γονεῖς, parents  
 γόνυ, -ατος, τό, knee  
 γράμμα, -ατος, τό, writing, letter  
 γράμματα (pl.), writings, letters  
 γραμματικός (3), grammatical  
 γραπτέος (3), must be written, one  
 must write  
 γραῦς, γράβς, ἡ, old woman  
 γραφή, writing, Scripture  
 γράφω, write  
 Γρύλλος, Gryllus, an Athenian,  
 father of Xenophon  
 γυμνάζω, exercise

γυμνάσιον, *gymnasium*  
 γυμναστική, *gymnastics*  
 γυμνής, -ήτος, ὁ, *light-armed soldier*  
 γυμνός (3), *naked*  
 γυνή, -αῖς, ἡ, *woman, wife*  
 γωνία, *corner, angle*

## Δ

δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ, *deity*  
 δαπανᾶω, *spend money*  
 δαρείκος, *daric, a Persian gold coin*  
 Δαρεῖος, *Darius*  
 δασμός, *tribute*  
 δέ, *but*  
 δείκνυμαι (dir. m.), *show myself*  
 δείκνυμαι (subj. m.), *manifest*  
 δείκνυμι, *I show*  
 δεῖπνον, *evening meal, supper, dinner*  
 δέκα, *ten*  
 δέκατος (3), *tenth*  
 Δελφοί, *Delphi, seat of world-famed oracle of Apollo on Mt. Parnassus*  
 δένδρον, *tree*  
 δεξιός (3), *right*  
 δεσμός, *chain*  
 δεσμώτης, *prisoner*  
 δεσπότης, *master*  
 δεύτερος (3), *second*  
 δέχομαι (dep.), *receive*  
 (δέω) δεῖ, ἔδει, *is (was) necessary*  
 δῆ, *now, indeed, in particular, just*  
 δηλόω, *make manifest*  
 δημαγωγός, *demagogue*  
 δῆμος, *people*  
 διά, *through*  
 δια-βαίνω, *cross*  
 δια-βάλλω, *slander, lit. throw across*  
 διάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *crossing*  
 δια-βατέος (3), *must be crossed*

δι-άγω, *lead or carry through, pass through*

δια-δίδωμι, *distribute*  
 δια-τηρέω, *preserve*  
 δια-τίθημι, *place in order, dispose*  
 διάφορος (2), *different*  
 διδάσκαλος, *teacher*  
 διδάσκω, *teach*  
 διδασχά, *teaching, doctrine*  
 δίδωμι, *give*  
 δι-έρχομαι, *come or go through*  
 δίκαιος (3), *just*  
 δικαιοσύνη, *justice*  
 δικαίως, *justly*  
 δίκτυον, *net*  
 δῖς, *twice*  
 διψᾶω, *thirst*  
 διώκω, *pursue*  
 δόγμα, -ατος, τό, *opinion, dogma*  
 δοκεῖ, ἐδόκει, *it seems (seemed) best*  
 δόξα, *opinion, glory*  
 δόρυ, -ατος, τό, *spear*  
 δουλεύω, *be slave*  
 δοῦλος, *slave*  
 δουλῶ, *enslave*  
 δράκων, -οντος, ὁ, *dragon*  
 δρόμος, *course, race-course*  
 δύναμαι (dep.), *be able*  
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ, *power*  
 δύο, *two*  
 δώδεκα, *twelve*  
 δῶρον, *gift*

## Ε

εἰ, ἢν, *if*  
 ἐαυτοῦ, *of himself*  
 ἑβδομος (3), *seventh*  
 Ἑβραῖος (3), *Hebrew*  
 ἐγγύς (adv. w. gen.), *near*  
 ἐγώ, *I*  
 ἐθέλω, *wish, be willing*

εἰ, *if*  
 εἶδον (2 aor.), *I saw*  
 εἶδος, εἶδους, τό, *form, appearance, kind*  
 εἴκοσι, *twenty*  
 εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ, *image, likeness*  
 εἰ μή, *if not, unless*  
 εἰμί, *I am*  
 εἶπον (2 aor.), *I said*  
 εἶρηκα (pf.) *I have said*  
 εἰρήνη, *peace*  
 εἷς, μία, ἓν, *one*  
 εἰς, *into*  
 εἰς-βάλλω, *invade*  
 ἐκ, ἐξ, *out, out of*  
 ἕκαστος (3), *each*  
 ἐκ-βάλλω, *cast out, banish*  
 ἐκ-δίδωμι, *give forth, of rivers empty*  
 ἐκεῖ, *there*  
 ἐκεῖνος (3), *that, he*  
 ἐκκλησίᾱ, *assembly, church*  
 ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out of, be exiled*  
 ἕκτος (3), *sixth*  
 ἐκόν, -οῦσα, -όν, *willing, usually translated willingly*  
 ἐλαύνω, *drive, march*  
 ἐλαφρός (3), *light*  
 ἐλευθερίᾱ, *freedom*  
 ἐλεύθερος (3), *free*  
 ἐλευθερόω, *free*  
 Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ, *Hellas, Greece*  
 Ἕλληνες, -ήνων, *Hellenes, Greeks*  
 Ἑλλησποντιακός (3), *Hellespontian, lying along the Hellespont*  
 Ἑλλησποντος, *Hellespont*  
 ἔλος, -ους, τό, *marsh*  
 ἐλπίζω, *hope*  
 ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *hope*  
 ἐμαυτοῦ, *of myself*  
 ἐμός (3), *my*  
 ἐν, *in*

ἐνδόξως, *gloriously*  
 ἕνεκα, *because of*  
 ἐννέα, *nine*  
 ἐν-οικέω, *inhabit*  
 ἐνταῦθα, *there, then*  
 ἐντεῦθεν, *thence*  
 ἐν-τίθημι, *place upon, place in*  
 ἐν ᾧ (adv. conj.), *while, lit. in what time*  
 ἕξ, *six*  
 ἐξ-άγω, *lead out*  
 ἐξ-αιτέω, *ask from, beg off*  
 ἐξ-ελαύνω, *march forth, advance*  
 ἔξεστι, *it is possible*  
 ἔξοδος, ἡ, *going out, Exodus*  
 ἔξω, *without*  
 ἐπεὶ (adv. conj.), *when, as*  
 ἐπ-εἰμι, *be upon, be over*  
 ἐπὶ, *upon*  
 ἐπὶ (w. dat. of pers.), *in power of*  
 ἐπι-βουλεύω, *plot against*  
 ἐπιβουλή, *plot*  
 ἐπι-κρύπτω, *conceal*  
 ἐπι-μελέομαι, *take care of*  
 ἐπίσταμαι (dep.), *know*  
 ἐπιστολή, *letter*  
 ἐπιτήδεια, n. pl., *provisions*  
 ἐπι-τίθεμαι, *attack*  
 ἐπι-τίθημι, *place upon*  
 ἐπιφάνεια, *appearance*  
 ἔπος, ἔπους, τό, *word; pl. often, epic poetry*  
 ἑπτὰ, *seven*  
 ἐργάτης, *workman*  
 ἔργον, *work*  
 ἐρίζω, *quarrel*  
 ἔρις, -ιδος, ἡ, *strife*  
 Ἐριφύλη, *Eriphylé*  
 ἑρμηνεύς, -έως, ὁ, *interpreter*  
 Ἑρμῆς, *Hermes*  
 ἔρχομαι, *come or go*

ἔρωτάω, *ask*  
 ἔστι, *it is permitted*  
 ἔσχατος (3), *extreme*  
 ἔσω, εἴσω, *within*  
 ἑταῖρος, *comrade*  
 ἔτι, *yet, still*  
 ἔτι νέος ὢν, *while still a youth*  
 ἐτοιμάζω, *prepare, make ready*  
 ἔτος, ἔτους, τό, *year*  
 εὖ, *well*  
 εὐαγγέλιον, *gospel, lit. good tidings*  
 εὐγενής (2), *well-born, noble*  
 εὐδαίμων (2), *prosperous*  
 εὐθύς, *straightway*  
 εὖνοια, *good-will*  
 Εὐξείνιος (2), *Euxine*  
 εὖ πάσχειν, *be well treated*  
 εὕρισκω, *find*  
 εὖρος, εὖρους, τό, *breadth*  
 εὐρύς (3), *broad*  
 εὐχομαι (dep.), *pray, vow*  
 Ἐφέσιος (3), *Ephesian*  
 ἐχθρός (3), *hostile (of private en-  
 mity)*  
 ἔχω, *have*

## Z

ζάω, *live*  
 ζητέω, *ask after, seek for*  
 ζυγόν, *yoke*

## H

ἢ, *or ; w. comparatives, than*  
 ἡγέομαι (dep.), (1) *lead*, (2) *consider*  
 ἡδέως, *gladly, sweetly*  
 ἦδη, *already*  
 ἡδομαι (dep.), *be glad, rejoice*  
 ἡδύς (3), *sweet*  
 ἦλθον, *I came*  
 ἥλιος, *sun*  
 ἦμαι (dep.), *sit*

ἡμεῖς, *we*  
 ἡμέρᾱ, *day*  
 ἡμέτερος (3), *our*  
 ἦν, *I was, he was*  
 Ἡρακλῆς, -οῦς, δ, *Heracles, national  
 hero of Greece*  
 ἥρως, ἥρωος, δ, *hero*  
 ἡσυχος (2), *quiet*  
 ἡττάομαι (dep.), *be worsted*

## Θ

θάλασσα, *sea*  
 θάνατος, *death*  
 θαυμάζω, *wonder, admire*  
 θεός, *god*  
 Θερμοπύλαι, *Thermopylae*  
 θέρος, θέρους, τό, *summer*  
 θῆλυς (3), *female*  
 θηρεύω, *hunt*  
 θής, θητός, δ, *serf*  
 θίβη, *ark (Hebrew word)*  
 θνήσκω (comm. ἀπο-θνήσκω), *die*  
 Θουκυδίδης, *Thucydides*  
 Θρᾷξ, -κος, δ, *Thracian*  
 θρίξ, τριχός, ἡ, *hair*  
 θύελλα, *gust, tempest*  
 θυμός, *soul, passion, feeling*  
 θύω, *sacrifice (a victim)*

## I

ἵεμαι, (1) *charge*, (2) *hasten*, (3)  
*desire*  
 ἱερεύς, -εώς, δ, *priest*  
 ἱερός (3), *sacred, hallowed*  
 ἵημι, *send*  
 Ἰθάκη, *Ithaca, island-realm of  
 Ulysses*  
 ἱκανός (3), *sufficient, competent*  
 ἱκνέομαι (dep.), *come*  
 Ἰλιάς, -άδος, ἡ, *Iliad*  
 ἱμάτιον, *mantle, outer garment*



ἵνα, in order that  
 ἵππεύς, -έως, ὁ, horseman  
 ἵπποπόταμος, river-horse  
 ἵππος, horse  
 Ἰσσοί, Issi or Issus  
 ἵστημι, set  
 ἱστορία, history  
 ἱστοριογράφος, historian  
 ἰσχυρός (3), strong  
 ἰσχύς, -ύς, ἡ, strength  
 ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ, fish  
 Ἰωάννης, John  
 Ἰωνικός (3), Ionian

## Κ

κάθ-ημαι (dep.), sit down, encamp  
 καθ-ίστημι, establish, lit. set down,  
 intrans. become established  
 καί, and, also  
 καί—καί, τε—καί, both—and  
 καιρός, time, specified time  
 Καῖσαρ, -αρος, Caesar  
 κακός (3), bad, cowardly  
 κακῶς πάσχω, be badly treated  
 καλέω, call, summon  
 κάλλιστος (3), most beautiful  
 κάλλος, -οῦς, τό, beauty  
 καλός (3), beautiful, comely  
 καλῶς, well, lit. beautifully  
 Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ, Calypso  
 Καστωλός, Castolus, a plain in  
 Western Asia Minor  
 κατα-βαίνω, descend  
 κατάβασις, -έως, ἡ, descent  
 κατ-άγω, restore, re-instate, lit. lead  
 down  
 κατα-κόπτω, cut to pieces  
 κατα-λαμβάνω, overtake, find  
 κατα-λύω, loose and let down, de-  
 stroy, dissolve; καταλύω (πόλε-  
 μόν), end hostilities, come to terms  
 κατα-νοέω, take note of

κατα-τιπéρας, opposite  
 κατα-πράττω, do completely, accom-  
 plish  
 κατα-σκοπεύω, watch closely  
 κατα-τίθημι, put down, deposit  
 κατα-χρίω, smear over  
 κάτω, down, below, low  
 κεῖμαι (dep.), (1) lie, (2) be placed  
 κελεύω, command  
 κενός (3), empty, vain  
 Κέρβερος, Cerberus  
 κεφαλή, head  
 κῆρυξ, -ῦκος, ὁ, herald  
 κηρύσσω, proclaim (by herald)  
 Κίλικες, -ίκων, ὁ, Cilicians  
 Κιλικία, Cilicia  
 Κίμων, -ωνος, ὁ, Cimon  
 κινδυνεύω, incur danger  
 κίνδυνος, danger  
 κλαίω, weep  
 κλάω, break  
 Κλέαρχος, Clearchus  
 κλέπτῃς, thief, brigand  
 κλέπτω, steal  
 κλίμαξ, -ακος, ἡ, ladder, staircase  
 κλοπή, theft  
 κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ, thief  
 κνημῖδες, -ίδων, αἱ, greaves  
 Κολοσσαί, Colossae  
 Κορσώτη, Corsoté  
 κοῦφος (3), light  
 κρατέω, be master of (with gen.)  
 κρᾶτήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ, mixing-bowl, in  
 which wine was mixed with water  
 κρέας, τό, flesh  
 κρέμαμαι (dep.), hang, be suspended  
 κρήνη, spring, fountain  
 Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, Cretan  
 κρίνω, distinguish, decide, judge  
 κρίσις, -εως, ἡ, decision, trial  
 κριτής, judge  
 Κροῖσος, Croesus, King of Lydia

κρύπτω, *hide*  
 κτάομαι, (dep.), *acquire*  
 κτείνω (comm. ἀπο-κτείνω), *kill*  
 κτῆμα, -ατος, τό, *possession*  
 Κύδνος, *Cydnius*  
 Κύκλωψ, -ωπος, ὁ, *Cyclops*  
 Κύριος, *Lord*  
 Κῦρος, *Cyrus*  
 κυών, κυνός, ὁ and ἡ, *dog, hound*  
 κωλύω, *hinder*  
 κώμη, *village*  
 Κωνσταντινούπολις, ἡ, *Constanti-  
 nople*

## Λ

λαμβάνω, *take*  
 λανθάνω, *escape notice*  
 λέγω, *call, say, name*  
 λείπω, *leave*  
 Λευί (indeclin.), *Levi* (Hebrew word)  
 Λεωνίδας, *Leonidas*, hero of Ther-  
 mopylae  
 Λητώ, Λητοῦς, ἡ, *Leto* (Lat. Latona)  
 λίθος, *stone*  
 λίμνη, *lake*  
 λιμός, *hunger, famine*  
 λόγος, *word, narrative*  
 λοιμός, *pestilence*  
 λοιπόν, *henceforth*  
 λοιπός (3), *remaining*  
 λούω, *wash*  
 λοχαγός, *captain*  
 Λυδία, *Lydia*, division in Western  
 Asia Minor  
 λύομαι (dir. m.), *loose myself*  
 λύομαι (indir. m.), *ransom*  
 λύω, *loose, destroy*

## Μ

μάθημα, -ατος, τό, *lesson*  
 μαθητής, *learner, scholar*

Μαίανδρος, *Maeander*  
 μάκαρ (1), *blessed*  
 μακάριος (3), *blessed*  
 μακρόθεν, *from afar off*  
 μακρός (3), *long*  
 μάλα, *very, exceedingly*  
 μάλιστα, *most*  
 μᾶλλον, *more*  
 μαθάνω, *learn*  
 Μάσκας, *Mascas*  
 μάχη, *battle*  
 μαχητέος (3), *one must fight*  
 μάχομαι (dep.), *fight*  
 Μεγαρεὺς, -έως, *Megarian*  
 μέγας (3), *great*  
 μέλαν, -ανος, τό, *ink*  
 μέλας (3), *black*  
 μέλι, -ιτος, τό, *honey*  
 μέλλω, *intend*  
 μέλος, μέλους, τό, (1) *limb, member,*  
 (2) *song*  
 μὲν—δέ, (—)—*but*  
 μέντοι, *however*  
 μένω, *remain*  
 μέρος, μέρους, τό, *part*  
 μέσον, *center*  
 μέσος (3), *middle*  
 μετά, *amid*  
 μετα-πέμπομαι, *summon*  
 μετα-πέμπω, *send after*  
 μετὰ τὸ Πάσχα, *after Easter*  
 μέτρον, *measure*  
 μέχρι, *up to, until*  
 μή, *not*  
 μῆκος, μήκους, τό, *length*  
 μήν, μηνός, ὁ, *month*  
 μήποτε, *never*  
 μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ, *mother*  
 Μητροπολίτης, *Metropolitan*, title  
 of bishops of certain cities of  
 importance

μικρός (3), *small*  
 Μιλήσιος (3), *Milesian, inhabitant of Miletus*  
 Μίλητος, ἡ, *Miletus, important Greek city of Asia Minor*  
 Μιλτιάδης, *Miltiades*  
 μισθός, *pay*  
 μισθοφόρος, *pay-bearer, mercenary soldier*  
 μισθόω, *hire*  
 μνᾶ, *mina (sum of money, about \$17)*  
 μονή, (1) *staying, (2) mansion*  
 μόνον, *only*  
 μόνος (3), *sole, only*  
 μουσα, *muse*  
 μύριοι (3), *ten thousand*

## N

ναός, *temple*  
 ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, *ship*  
 ναύτης, *sailor*  
 νεανίας, *youth*  
 νεκρός (3), *dead*  
 νέος (3), *new*  
 νεφέλη, *cloud*  
 νῆσος, ἡ, *island*  
 νίω, *wash*  
 νικάω, *be victor, conquer*  
 νίκη, *victory*  
 Νικομήδεια, *Nicomedia, city in Bithynia*  
 νομίζω, (1) *consider, (2) think*  
 νόμος, *law*  
 νόστος, *return*  
 νοῦς, *mind*  
 νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night*

## Ξ

Ξενίας, *Xenias, one of Cyrus's generals*

ξένος, (1) *stranger, (2) guest-friend*  
 Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, *Xenophon, author of the Anabasis*  
 ξίφος, ξίφους, τό, *sword, straight and often double-edged*

## Ο

ὁ, ἡ, τό, *the*  
 ὀγδοός (3), *eighth*  
 ὅδε, *this (one)*  
 ὁδός, ἡ, *way*  
 Ὀδυσσεύς, *Odyssey*  
 Ὀδυσσεύς, -εως, ὁ, *Odysseus, Ulysses*  
 οἶδα, *I know*  
 οἶκαδε, *homeward*  
 οἰκέω,  *dwell*  
 οἶκημα, -τος, τό, *room*  
 οἰκία, *house*  
 οἶκοι, adv., *at home*  
 οἰκούμενος (3), *inhabited*  
 οἶνος, *wine*  
 οἶμαι (dep.) *think*  
 ὀιστός, *arrow*  
 ὀκτώ, *eight*  
 ὀλίγος (3), *little, few*  
 ὀλλυμαι (dir. m.), *perish*  
 ὀλλῦμι, *destroy*  
 ὁ μὲν—ὁ δέ, *the one—the other*  
 ὀνίνημι, *profit, benefit*  
 ὀνόματα (n. pl.), *names*  
 ὀξύς (3), *sharp*  
 ὄπλα, *arms*  
 ὀπλίτης, *heavy-armed soldier*  
 ὄπλον, *utensil, piece of armor*  
 ὀπόσος (3), *as much as, pl. as many as*  
 ὅπου, *where*  
 ὅπως, *in order that, in what way*  
 ὀρκος, *oath*

ὀρμάω, *urge, rush*; midd. often  
start from

ὀρμέω, *be moored*

ὄρνις, -νιθος, ὅ and ἡ, *bird, fowl*

ὀρνυμαι (dir. m.), *arise*

ὀρνύμι, *rouse, stir up*

ὄρος, ὄρους, τό, *mountain*

ὄρῳ, *see*

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, *who, which*

ὅσος (3), *as great as, pl. as many  
as*

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅτι, *whoever, which-  
ever*

ὀστοῦν, *bone*

ὅτε, *when, as*

ὅτι, *that, because*

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, *no, not*

οὐ, *of himself*

οὐ, *where*

οὐδέ, *but not, nor, not even*

οὐδεὶς (3), *no one, no*

οὐδέν, *in no respect, not as*

οὐκέτι, *no longer*

οὖν, *therefore*

οὐρά, (1) *tail, (2) rear (of army)*

οὐρανός, *sky, heaven*

οὖς, ὠτός, τό, *ear*

οὔτε—οὔτε, *neither—nor*

Οὐτις, *Nobody*

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this, he*

οὕτω, οὕτως, *thus (as precedes)*

ὄψις, -εως, ἡ, *countenance*

## Π

παιδίον, *child*

παίζω, *play*

παῖς, παιδός, ὅ and ἡ, *boy or girl*

παίω, *strike*

παλαιός (3), *old*

πάλη, *wrestling*

πανταχοῦ, *everywhere*

παντοῖος (3), *of every sort*

πάντως, *wholly, by all means, cer-  
tainly*

παρά, *by the side of*

παρ-αγγέλλω, *give orders to*

παρ-α-γίγνομαι (dep.), *become present,  
report for duty*

παράδεισος, *park*

παρ-α-δίδωμι, *hand over*

παρ-α-λαμβάνω, *receive from*

παρ-α-πορεύομαι, *proceed along by*

παρασάγγης, *parasang, league (3½  
miles)*

παρασκευή, *preparation*

πάρ-ειμι, *be present*

παρ-έρχομαι, *pass along, pass by*

παρ-έχω, *furnish*

Παρθενών, -ώνος, ὁ, *Parthenon, tem-  
ple of Athena*

Παρράσιος (3), *Parrhasian, of Par-  
rhasia, a town of Arcadia*

Παρύσατις, -ιδος, ἡ, *Parysatis, mo-  
ther of Artaxerxes and Cyrus*

πᾶς (3), *all*

Πασίων, -ωνος, ὁ, *Pasion, general  
of Cyrus*

πάσχω ὑπό τινος, *be treated by any  
one*

πάσχω, *suffer, be recipient of good  
or bad treatment*

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ, *father*

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *fatherland*

πατρώιος (3), *paternal*

Παῦλος, *Paul*

παύομαι (dir. m.), *cease from*

παύω, *arrest*

πιέζω, *press*

πείθομαι (dir. m.), *obey*

πείθω, *persuade*

πεινάω, *hunger*

πειράομαι (dep.), *try*

πειστέος (3), one must obey  
 Πελοποννήσιος (3), Peloponnesian  
 Πέλλα, *Pellae*, city in Asia Minor  
 πελταστής, light-armed soldier  
 πέμπτος (3), fifth  
 πέμπω, send  
 πένης (2), poor  
 πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, five hundred  
 πέντε, five  
 πέραν, on farther side of  
 περί, about  
 περι-γίγνομαι (dep.), become superior to  
 περι-μένω, wait for  
 περίπατος, stroll, promenade  
 περι-ρρέω, flow about  
 Πέρσης, Persian  
 πέτρα, rock  
 Πηνελόπη, Penelope, wife of Ulysses  
 πῆχυς, -εως, ὁ, cubit  
 πικρός (3), bitter  
 πῖμπλημι, fill  
 Πισίδαι, Pisidians, of Pisidia, a mountainous district of Asia Minor  
 πῖσσα, pitch  
 πιστεύω, trust  
 πίστις, -εως, ἡ, faith  
 πιστός (3), faithful, trusty  
 πῖων (2), fat  
 πλεθριαῖος (3), of a plethrum  
 πλέθρον, plethrum (101 ft.)  
 πλὴν, except  
 πλήρης (2), full  
 πλῆσιον, near  
 πλοῖον, transport  
 πλούσιος (3), rich  
 ποιέω, make  
 ποιητέος (3), must be done, one must do

ποιμήν, -εως, ὁ, shepherd  
 πολεμέω, wage war  
 πολέμιος (3), warlike, hostile  
 πόλεμος, war  
 πολιορκέω, besiege  
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ, city  
 πολιτεία, commonwealth  
 πολίτης, citizen  
 πολιτικός (3), political  
 πολλάκις, often  
 πολλὰ πάσχω, suffer much  
 πολὺς (3), much, pl. many  
 πονηρός (3), bad, worthless  
 πόνος, toil, labor  
 πορεύομαι (dir. midd.), proceed  
 πορευτέος (3), one must march  
 πορεύω, carry  
 πορίζομαι (indir. m.), I provide myself with  
 πορίζω, furnish, provide  
 πόσος (3), how much? pl. how many?  
 ποταμός, river  
 πότε, when?  
 ποτόν, drink  
 ποῦ, where?  
 πούς, ποδός, ὁ, foot  
 πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό, thing  
 πράγματα παρέχω, furnish trouble  
 πράξις, -εως, ἡ, action  
 πρέσβεις, ambassadors  
 πρεσβευτής, ambassador  
 πρεσβύτερος, πρεσβύτατος (3), older, oldest; the positive πρέσβυς is chiefly used as subst., old man, ambassador  
 πρὶν, before  
 πρό, before, for  
 προ-αισθάνομαι, perceive beforehand  
 προ-βάλλομαι τὰ ὅπλα, present arms

πρόγονος, progenitor, ancestor  
 προ-δίδωμι, betray  
 προδότης, traitor  
 προ-ίστημι, (1) trans. set before, put  
     in command, (2) intrans. stand  
     before, command  
 πρόσ, confronting  
 προσ-ελαύνω, march toward  
 προσ-έχω, attend  
 πρόσθεν, before, sooner  
 προσ-τίθημι, put to, add to; midd.  
     accede to  
 πρότερος (3), former  
 πρόφασις, -εως, ἡ, pretext  
 πρῶτος (3), first  
 πτερῶεις (3), winged  
 πτωχός (3), poor  
 πυγμή, boxing  
 Πυθαγόρας, Pythagoras  
 πύλη, gate  
 Πύραμος, Pyramus  
 πωλέω, sell  
 πῶς, how?

## P

ῥάδιος (3), easy  
 ῥέω, flow  
 ῥητορικός (3), rhetorical  
 ῥήτωρ, -ορος, ὁ, orator  
 ῥίζα, root  
 ῥίπτω, throw  
 ῥόδον, rose  
 Ῥόδος, ἡ, Rhodes

## Σ

σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ἡ, trumpet  
 σαλπίζω, blow trumpet  
 Σάρδεις, -εων, αἱ, Sardis  
 σατράπης, satrap, title of Persian  
     governor  
 σαφής (2), clear

σαφῶς, clearly  
 σεαυτοῦ, of thyself  
 σήμερον, to-day  
 σιγή, silence  
 Σίμων, Simon  
 σῖτος, pl. σῖτα, grain, food  
 σιωπᾶω, be silent  
 σκηνή, tent  
 σκῆπτρον, sceptre  
 σκιά, shadow  
 Σκύθης, Scythian  
 σός (3), thy (your)  
 Σοφαίνετος, Sophænetus, one of  
     Cyrus's generals  
 σοφία, wisdom  
 σοφός (3), wise  
 σοφῶς, wisely  
 Σπάρτη, Sparta  
 σπένδω, pour out (as libation)  
 σπονδαί, pl. of σπονδή, truce  
 σπονδὰς ποιῶμαι, conclude a truce  
 σπονδή, libation  
 στάδιον, stadium, furlong (608 ft.)  
 στάδιοι pl. of foregoing, stadia  
 σταθμός, (1) station, (2) day's  
     march  
 στάσις, -εως, ἡ, faction  
 στατέος (3), must be placed, one  
     must place  
 στελλω, send  
 στέργω, love (feel natural affec-  
     tion)  
 στέφανος, crown  
 στόλος, armament  
 στόμα, -ατος, τό, (1) mouth, (2) van  
     (of army)  
 στράτευμα, army  
 στρατεύομαι (dep.), make expedi-  
     tion, take the field  
 στρατηγός, general  
 στρατιά, army

στρατιώτης, soldier

Στυμφάλιος (3), *Stymphalian*, of  
*Stymphalia*, mountainous dis-  
trict in Northern Arcadia

σύ, *thou*, (you)

συν-γίγνομαι, *come to be with*, be-  
come acquainted with (w. dat.)

συν-γραφεύς, -εως, ὁ, *author*, writer

συν-γράφω, *recount* (as historian)

συν-λαμβάνω, *apprehend*, arrest

συν-λέγω, *collect*

συλλογή, *collection*, levy

συν-βάλλω, *throw together*; midd.  
often contribute

συν-βουλεύομαι (indir. midd.), *get*  
*counsel*, consult with

συν-βουλεύω, *counsel*, give coun-  
sel

συν-πράττω, *co-operate with* (w.  
dat.)

σύν, *with*

συν-αλλάττω, *exchange*; in pass.  
often become reconciled

συν-έρχομαι, *come together*

συν-τίθεμαι, *agree*

συν-τίθημι, *put together*; midd.  
*agree on*, conclude

Σύρος, *Syrian*

συ-στρατεύομαι, *make an expedition*  
with (w. dat.)

σχεδόν, *almost*

σχολή, (1) *leisure*, (2) *school*

σφάζω, *save*

σῶμα, -ατος, τό, *body*

σωτήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ, *saviour*

σώφρων (2), *discreet*

# T

τάξις, -εως, ἡ, *faction*

ταῦρος, *bull*

τάφος, *tomb*

ταχέως, *quickly*

ταχύς (3), *quick*, swift

τείχος, τείχους, τό, *wall*

τε—καί, *both—and*

τελευταῖος (3), *last*, final

τελευτάω, (1) *end*, (2) *die*

τελευτή, *end*

τελέω, *complete*

τέλος, τέλους, τό, *end*

τηρέω, *keep*, observe

τέσσαρες (2), *four*

τέταρτος (3), *fourth*

τετρακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *four thou-*  
*sand*

τέχνη, *art*

τί, *what?* why?

τίθεμαι τὰ ὄπλα, lit. *place one's*  
*arms* (on ground); hence, *ground*  
*arms*, halt

τίθημι, *put*, place

τίκτω, *beget*, bring forth

τιμᾶω, *honor*

τιμή, *honor*

τίμιος (3 and 2), *valued*, precious

τίς, τί, *who?* what?

τις, τι, *some*, any

Τισσαφέρνης, -ους, *Tissaphernes*, a  
Persian satrap, a dangerous foe  
of the Greeks

τόξον, *bow*

τοξότης, *bow-man*

τόπος, *place*

τότε, *then*

τραῦμα, -ατος, τό, *wound*

τρεῖς, τρία, *three*

τρέφω, *nourish*, foster, maintain

τρέχω, *run*

τριάκοντα, *thirty*

τριάκονσιοι, -αι, -α, *three hundred*

τριήρης (2), *three-banked*; also  
subst. *trireme*

τρίτος (3), *third*  
 τρόπος, *turn, character*  
 τροφή, *maintenance, support*  
 τυγχάνω, *happen, chance*  
 τυραννίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *absolute power, tyranny*

## Τ

ὕβρις, -εως, ἡ, *wanton arrogance*  
 ὑγιής (2), *healthy*  
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water*  
 υἱός, *son*  
 ὕληεις (3), *wooded*  
 ὑμεῖς, *you*  
 ὑμέτερος (3), *your*  
 ὑπ-άρχω, (1) *begin*, (2) *begin service of any kind, aid*  
 ὑπέρ, *beyond, over*  
 ὕπνος, *sleep*  
 ὑπό, *under* ; w. pass. verb, *by*  
 ὑποζύγιον, *pack-animal*  
 ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect*  
 ὑποψία, *suspicion*  
 ὕστερος (3), *later*  
 ὑψηλός (3), *lofty*  
 ὕψος, ὕψους, τό, *height*

## Φ

φαίνομαι (dir. midd.), *appear*  
 φαίνω, *show*  
 Φαλῖνος, *Phalinus*, a Greek in the service of Persian king  
 Φαραώ (indecl.), *Pharaoh* title of kings of Egypt  
 Φαρνάβαζος, *Pharnabazus*, satrap of Northern Asia Minor  
 φέρω, *bear*  
 φεύγω, *flee*  
 φημί, *say*  
 φθάνω, *anticipate*  
 φιλαργυρία, *love of money*

φιλία, *friendship*  
 φιλικῶς, *in a friendly manner*  
 φίλιος (3), *friendly*  
 φίλος, *friend*  
 φιλό-σοφος, *philosopher*  
 φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ, *vein*  
 φοβέομαι, *fear*  
 φόβος, *fear*  
 Φοινίκη, *Phoenician*  
 φορτίον, *burden*  
 φρόνημα, -ατος, τό, *spirit*  
 φρούραρχος, *garrison-commander*  
 φυγάς, -άδος, δ, *fugitive*  
 φυγή, *flight*  
 φυλακή, *watching, guard*  
 φύλαξ, -ακος, δ, *sentry*  
 Φύλαξ, *Watch*  
 φυλάττομαι (indir. midd.), *to be on one's guard against*  
 φυλάττω, *guard*  
 φωνή, *voice*  
 φωνήεις (3), *vocal, speaking*

## Χ

χαλεπός (3), *hard*  
 Χάλος, *Chalus*  
 χαρίεις (3), *graceful*  
 χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ, (1) *grace*, (2) *thanks*  
 χειμών, -ῶνος, δ, (1) *storm*, (2) *winter*  
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ, *hand*  
 Χειρίσοφος, *Cheirisophus*, a Spartan general, successor of Clearchus  
 Χερρόνησος, ἡ, *Chersonesus*, peninsula north of Hellespont  
 χράομαι (dep.), *use*  
 χρή, *it is necessary or proper*  
 χρήματα (ntr. pl.) *money*  
 χρήσιμος (3), *useful*



Χριστιανός (3), *Christian*  
 χρόνος, *time*  
 χρυσίον, *gold coin, money*  
 χρῆσός, *gold*  
 χώρα, *country*

Ψ

Ψάρος, *Parus*  
 ψευδής (2), *false*  
 ψεύδομαι (dep.), *lie*

ψεῦδος, ψεύδους, τό, *lie*  
 ψυχή, (1) *life*, (2) *soul*

Ω

Ω, *O!*  
 ὧς, *thus* (as follows)  
 ὥρᾱ, *hour*  
 ὥς (w. persons only), *to*  
 ὥς, *as*  
 ὥστε, *so that*, comm. w. infin.

WORDS OMITTED IN GREEK VOCABULARY.

ἀδυσμία, *despondency*  
 ἀποβάλλω, *throw away*  
 βαθύς (3), *deep*  
 δεξιός (3), *right*  
 εἶμι, *go*  
 ἔπομαι (dep.), *follow*  
 Θεμιστοκλῆς, -κλούς, *Themistocles*  
 Ἰησοῦς, *Jesus*

ναύαρχος, *ship-commander*  
 ὀφθαλμός, *eye*  
 πάλιν, *again, back*  
 πρό-εimi, *go forward*  
 προσ-έρχομαι, *come or go toward*  
 τύχη, *chance, Fortune*  
 ὑπέρ, *in behalf of*  
 Χριστός, *Christ*

## ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

---

### A

able, am able, δύναμαι (dep.)  
 about, ἀμφί, w. acc.; am about  
 to, μέλλω  
 Abrocomas, Ἀβροκόμας  
 Abūdus, Ἀβῦδος  
 accede to, προσ-τίθεμαι (midd.),  
 w. dat.  
 accomplish, κατα-πράττω  
 Achaian, Ἀχαιός (3)  
 Achilles, Achilleus, Ἀχιλλεύς,  
 -έως  
 acorn, βάλανος, ἡ  
 acquire, κτάομαι (dep.)  
 across, διά, w. gen.  
 action, act, πράξις, -εως, ἡ  
 add to, προστίθημι, w. dat.  
 admire, ἄγαμαι (dep.), θαυμάζω  
 advance, ἐξ-ελαύνω, πορεύομαι  
 advise, συμ-βουλεύω  
 after, μετά, w. acc.  
 after Easter, μετὰ τὸ Πάσχα  
 again, αὖ  
 against, ἐπί, w. acc.  
 age, αἰών, -ῶνος, ὁ  
 agree to, συν-τίθεμαι (midd.)  
 aid, βοήθεια  
 aid, ὠφελέω, ὑπ-άρχω

all, πᾶς (3)  
 alone, μόνος (3)  
 already, ἤδη  
 altogether, παντάπᾳσι  
 always, ἀεί  
 am, εἰμί  
 ambassador, πρεσβευτής in sing.,  
 pl. πρέσβεις, -εων  
 America, Ἀμερική  
 amid, μετά, prep. w. gen. and  
 dat.  
 among, ἐν, w. dat.  
 ancestor, πρόγονος  
 ancient, παλαιός (3)  
 anciently, παλαιόν  
 and, καί  
 Andrew, Ἀνδρέας  
 announce, ἀγγέλλω  
 answer, ἀπο-κρίνομαι (dep.)  
 anticipate, φθάνω  
 any, τις, τι  
 Apollo, Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος  
 apostle, ἀπόστολος  
 appear, φαίνομαι (midd.)  
 appearance, εἶδος, -ους, τό  
 appoint, ἀπο-δείκνυμι  
 apprehend, συλ-λαμβάνω  
 Arcadia, Ἀρκαδίᾱ

Arcadian, Ἀρκάς, -άδος, ὁ  
 archer, τοξότης  
 Archimandrite, Ἀρχιμανδρίτης  
 Ares, Ἄρης, -εως  
 Ariaeus, Ἀριαῖος  
 arm, ὄπλον  
 arms, ὄπλα  
 armament, στόλος  
 army, στρατιά, στρατός, στράτευμα,  
 -ατος, τό  
 arrangement, τάξις, -εως, ἡ  
 arrest, συλ-λαμβάνω  
 arrive, ἀφ-ικνέομαι (dep.)  
 arrow, διστός  
 art, τέχνη  
 Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης  
 Artemis, Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, ἡ  
 ascent, ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ  
 Asia, Ἀσία  
 ask, ἐρωτάω  
 ask after, ζητέω  
 ask from, ἐξ-αιτέω  
 as much as, as many as, ὅσος,  
 ὅσοι (3)  
 assembly, ἐκκλησίᾳ  
 Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος (3)  
 Athena, Ἀθηνᾶ  
 Athens, Ἀθῆναι  
 athlete, ἀθλητής  
 at home, οἶκοι  
 attend to, προσ-έχω, w. dat.  
 author, συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ  
 await, περι-μένω

## B

Babylon, Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ὁ  
 bad, κακός (3)  
 banish, ἐκ-βάλλω  
 barbarian, βάρβαρος  
 battle, μάχη  
 be, εἰμί

be able, δύναμαι (dep.)  
 be about to, μέλλω  
 be at hand, πάρ-ειμι  
 be away, ἄπ-ειμι  
 be badly treated, κακῶς πάσχω  
 be beaten, ἡττάομαι  
 be burdened at, ἄχθομαι, w. gen.  
 of cause  
 be friendly, εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω  
 be glad, ἡδομαι  
 be grateful, χάριν οἶδα  
 be present, πάρεμι  
 be reconciled, passive of συν-  
 αλλάττω  
 be silent, σιωπᾶω  
 be sick, ἀσθενέω  
 be treated by any one, πάσχω  
 ὑπό τινος  
 be troubled at, ἄχθομαι, w. gen.  
 of cause  
 be upon, ἐπ-ειμι  
 be victorious, νικάω  
 be well treated, εὖ πάσχω  
 be willing, ἐθέλω  
 bear, φέρω  
 beast-of-burden, ὑποζύγιον  
 beautiful, καλός (3)  
 beauty, κάλλος, -ους, τό  
 because of, ἔνεκα, w. gen., διά, w.  
 acc.  
 become, γίγνομαι  
 become acquainted, συγ-γίγνομαι  
 become superior, περι-γίγνομαι  
 before, πρό, w. gen.  
 before face of, πρός, w. gen.  
 beget, τίκτω  
 begin, ἄρχω, governs gen.  
 beginning, ἀρχή  
 being, ὢν, pres. ptc. εἰμί  
 being able, δυνάμενος, pres. ptc. (3)  
 benefit, ἐνίημι

besiege, πολιορκέω  
 betray, προ-δίδωμι  
 beyond, πέραν, w. gen.  
 bird, ὄρνις, -ιθος, ὁ and ἡ  
 bitter, πικρός (3)  
 black, μέλας (3)  
 blessed, μάκαρ (1), μακάριος (3)  
 blood, αἷμα, -ατος, τό  
 boat, transport, πλοῖον  
 body, σῶμα, -ατος, τό  
 Bœotia, Βοιωτία  
 Bœotian, Βοιωτίας (3)  
 bone, ὀστούν  
 book, βιβλίον  
 both, ἀμφότερος (3)  
 both—and, τε—καί, καί—καί  
 bow, τόξον  
 bowman, τοξότης  
 boy, παῖς, -δός, ὁ  
 bread, ἄρτος  
 breadth, εὖρος, -ους, τό  
 break, ῥήγνυμι, κλάω  
 bridge, γέφυρα  
 bring forth, beget, τίκτω  
 broad, εὐρύς (3)  
 brother, ἀδελφός  
 bull, ταῦρος  
 burden, φορτίον  
 but, ἀλλά (ἀλλ'), δέ  
 but not, οὐδέ  
 by (of agent), ὑπό, w. gen.

C

Caesar, Καῖσαρ, -αρος  
 call, καλέω (summon), λέγω  
 (name)  
 Calypso, Καλυψώ, οὗς, ἡ  
 came, I came, ἦλθον, 2 aor.  
 camp, στρατόπεδον  
 can, δύναμαι (dep.)  
 captain, λοχαγός

care for, ἐπι-μελέομαι, w. gen.  
 cargo, φορτίον  
 carry, φέρω, πορεύω  
 cast out, ἐκ-βάλλω  
 Castölus, Καστωλός  
 cease, παύομαι (midd.), w. gen.  
 center, μέσον  
 Cerberus, Κέρβερος  
 chain, δεσμός  
 Chalus, Χάλος  
 chance, τυγχάνω  
 change, ἀλλάττω  
 charge (on enemy), ἔεμαι (midd.)  
 Chirisophus, Χειρίσοφος  
 Chersonesus, Χερρόνησος, ἡ  
 child, τέκνον, παῖς, -δός  
 Christ, Χριστός  
 Christian, Χριστιανός  
 church, ἐκκλησιᾶ  
 Cilicia, Κιλικία  
 Cilician (woman), Κίλισσα  
 Cimon, Κίμων, -ωνος  
 citizen, πολίτης  
 city, πόλις, -εως, ἡ, ἔστυ, -εως, τό  
 claim, ἀξιόω  
 clear, σαφής (2)  
 clearly, σαφῶς  
 cloud, νεφέλη  
 Colossae, Κολοσσαί  
 collect, ἀθροίζω, συλ-λέγω  
 come, ἔρχομαι, ἀφ-ικνέομαι  
 come to be, γίγνομαι (dep.)  
 come through, δι-έρχομαι  
 come together, συν-έρχομαι  
 command, κελεύω  
 commonwealth, πολιτεία  
 companion, ἐταῖρος  
 competent, ἱκανός (3)  
 complete, τελέω  
 conceal, ἐπι-κρύπτω  
 conquer, νικάω

consider, *ἡγίεμαι*  
 contest, *ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ, ἄθλος*  
 Constantinople, *Κωνσταντινού-  
 πολις, -εως, ἡ*  
 constitution, *πολιτεία*  
 consult with, *συμ-βουλεύομαι*  
 (midd.)  
 contest, *ἄθλος, ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ*  
 contribute, *συμ-βάλλομαι* (midd.)  
 co-operate, *συμ-πράττω*  
 council, counsel, *βουλή*  
 counsel, *βουλεύω*  
 countenance, *ὄψις, -εως, ἡ*  
 country, *χώρα (land), πατρίς,  
 -ῖδος, ἡ* (fatherland)  
 courage, *ἀνδρεία*  
 courageous, *ἀνδρείος (3)*  
 covetousness, *φιλαργυρία*  
 cow, *βοῦς, βοός, ἡ*  
 cowardly, *κακός (3)*  
 Cretan, *Κρής, -τός, ὁ*  
 Croesus, *Κροῖσος*  
 crop, *καρπός*  
 cross, *διαβαίνω*  
 crossing, *διάβασις, -εως, ἡ*  
 cube, *κύβος*  
 cubit, *πῆχυς, εως, ὁ*  
 custom, *νόμος*  
 cut down, *κατα-κόπτω*  
 Cyclops, *Κύκλωψ, -ωπος, ὁ*  
 Cydnus, *Κύδνος*  
 Cyrus, *Κῦρος*

## D

danger, *κίνδυνος*  
 Dardanelles, *Ἑλλήσποντος*  
 daric, *δαρεικός*  
 Darius, *Δαρείος*  
 date, *βάλανος, ἡ*  
 daughter, *θυγατήρ, -τρός, ἡ*  
 day, *ἡμέρα*

daybreak, *ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ*  
 day's march, *σταθμός*  
 dead, *νεκρός (3 and subst.)*  
 dear, *φίλος (3)*  
 death, *θάνατος*  
 declare opinion, *ἀπο-φαίνομαι*  
*γνώμην*  
 dedicate, *ἀνα-τίθημι*  
 deem worthy, *ἀξιόω*  
 deep, *βαθύς (3)*  
 deity, *δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ*  
 deliberate, *βουλεύομαι*  
 Delphi, *Δελφοί, pl. only*  
 demagogue, *δημαγωγός*  
 deposit, *κατα-τίθημι*  
 descent, *κατάβασις, εως, ἡ*  
 describe, *συγ-γράφω*  
 desert, *ἀπο-λείπω*  
 desire, *ἵεμαι* (midd.), w. gen.  
 destroy, *ὑλλῶμι*  
 dice, *κύβοι*  
 die (cube), *κύβος*  
 dinner, *δείπνον*  
 disciple, *μαθητής*  
 discreet, *σώφρων (2)*  
 disgrace, *ἀτιμάζω*  
 disgracefully, *αἰσχρῶς*  
 dismiss, *ἀπο-πέμπω*  
 distinguish, *κρίνω*  
 distribute, *δια-δίδωμι*  
 distrust, *ἀπιστέω*  
 divinity, *δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ*  
 do, *ποιέω*  
 do completely, *κατα-πράττω*  
 doctrine, *διδασχὴ*  
 dogma, *δόγμα, -ατος, τό*  
 down, *κάτω*  
 dragon, *δράκων, -οντος, ὁ*  
 drink, *ποτόν*  
 drive into exile, *ἐκ-βάλλω*  
 dwell in, *οικέω and ἐν-οικέω*

E

each, ἕκαστος (3), pred. position  
 ear, οὖς, ὠτός, τό  
 earth, γῆ  
 east, ἀνατολή  
 easy, ῥάδιος (3)  
 edit, ἐκ-δίδωμι  
 education, παιδεία  
 eight, ὀκτώ  
 eighth, ὀγδοος (3)  
 empty, ἐκ-δίδωμι  
 end, τελευτή, τέλος, -ους, τό  
 end a war, κατα-λύω πόλεμον  
 end of, at, ἔκρος (3)  
 enemy (public), πολέμιος, comm.  
 pl.  
 enemy (personal), ἐχθρός  
 England, Ἀγγλία  
 enslave, δουλῶ  
 Ephesian, Ἐφέσιος (3)  
 Eriphyle, Ἐριφύλη  
 escape notice, λαθάνω  
 establish, καθ-ίστημι  
 Ethiopian, Αἰθίοψ, -οπος  
 Europe, Εὐρώπη  
 Euxine, Εὐξεινος (2)  
 ever, αἰεί  
 everywhere, πανταχοῦ  
 evil, κακόν  
 exactly, ἀκριβῶς  
 exceedingly, λίαν  
 except, ἄνευ, prep. w. gen.  
 except, unless, εἰ μή, conj.  
 exercise, γυμνάζω  
 exists, ἔστι  
 export, ἐξ-άγω  
 extreme, ἔσχατος (3)

F

faction, στάσις, -εως, ἡ  
 faithful, πιστός (3)  
 fall, πίπτω

fall out of (= be banished), ἐκ-  
 πίπτω  
 false, ψευδής (2)  
 falsehood, ψεῦδος, -ους, τό  
 famine, λιμός  
 farmer, γεωργός  
 fat, πῖον (2)  
 father, πατήρ, -ρός  
 fatherland, πατρίς, -ίς, ἡ  
 fear, φόβος  
 fear, be afraid, φοβέομαι  
 feathered, πτερόεις (3)  
 feel gratitude, χάριν οἶδα  
 feeling, θῦμός  
 female, θήλυς (3)  
 fifth, πέμπτος (3)  
 fight, μάχομαι  
 fill, πίμπλημι  
 find, εὕρισκω  
 finger, δάκτυλος  
 finish, τελευτάω  
 first, πρῶτος (3)  
 fish, ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ  
 five, πέντε  
 five hundred, πεντακόσιοι (3)  
 flee, φεύγω  
 flight, φυγή  
 float, πλέω  
 flow, ῥέω  
 follow, ἕπομαι, w. dat.  
 food, σῖτος, pl. σῖτα  
 foot, πούς, ποδός, ὁ  
 for, γάρ  
 force, δύναμις, -εως, ἡ  
 four, τέσσαρες (2)  
 fourth, τέταρτος (3)  
 fountain, κρήνη  
 fowl, ὄρνις, -ιθος, ὁ and ἡ  
 free, ἐλεύθερος (3)  
 freedom, ἐλευθερία  
 friend, φίλος  
 friendly, φίλιος (3)

friendship, *φιλία*  
 from (the side of), *παρά*, w. gen.  
 from (away from), *ἀπό*, w. gen.  
 from (out of), *ἐκ*, w. gen.  
 fruit, *καρπός*  
 furnish, *παρ-έχω*, *πορίζω*

## G

garrison-commander, *φρούραρχος*  
 gate, *πύλη*  
 gather, *ἀθροίζω*  
 gave, I gave, *ἔδωκα*, 1 aor. *δίδωμι*  
 gave, I gave (of my own), *ἑδόμην*,  
 2 aor. midd.  
 general, *στρατηγός*  
 gift, *δῶρον*  
 girl, *παῖς*, *παιδός*, *ἡ*  
 give, *δίδωμι*  
 give back, *ἀπο-δίδωμι*  
 give counsel, *συμ-βουλεύω*  
 give forth (empty), *ἐκ-δίδωμι*  
 give orders, *παρ-αγγέλλω*  
 give over, give up, *παρα-δίδωμι*  
 giving, *διδούς*, pres. ptc. (3)  
 gladly, *ἡδέως*  
 gloriously, *ἐνδόξως*  
 glory, *δόξα*  
 go, *βαίνω*, *εἶμι*  
 go away, *ἀπο-βαίνω*  
 go through, *δια-βαίνω*  
 go up, *ἀνα-βαίνω*  
 goat, *αἴξ*, *αἰγός*, *ὁ* and *ἡ*  
 god, *Θεός*  
 gold, *χρῦσός*  
 gold coin, *χρῦσίον*  
 gone, be gone, *σείχομαι*  
 good, *ἀγαθός* (3)  
 good-will, *εὐνοία*  
 gospel, *εὐαγγέλιον*  
 grace, *χάρις*, *-ιτος*, *ἡ*  
 graceful, *χαρίεις* (3)  
 grain, *σίτος*, pl. *σίτα*

grammar, *γραμματική*  
 grammatical, *γραμματικός* (3)  
 great, *μέγας* (3)  
 greater, *μείζων* (2)  
 greaves, *κνημίδες*, *-ων*, *αἱ*  
 Greece, *Ἑλλάς*, *-άδος*, *ἡ*  
 Greek, *Ἑλληνικός* (3)  
 Greeks, *Ἕλληνες*, *-ων*  
 greet, *ἀσπάζομαι* (dep.)  
 ground arms, *τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα*  
 Gryllus, *Γρύλλος*  
 guard, *φυλάττω*  
 guard (one's self), *φυλάττομαι*  
 guest-friend, *ξένος*  
 gust, *θύελλα*

## H

Hades, *Ἅιδης*  
 hair, *θρίξ*, *τριχός*, *ἡ*  
 half, *ἡμισυς* (3)  
 halt, *τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα*  
 hand, *χείρ*, *χειρός*, *ἡ*  
 hand over, *παρα-δίδωμι*  
 hang, *κρέμαμαι* (dep.)  
 happen, *τυγχάνω*  
 hard, *χαλεπός* (3)  
 have, *έχω*  
 have at hand, *παρ-έχω*  
 he, when not emphatic, suffi-  
 ciently implied in the verb  
 head, *κεφαλή*  
 hear, *ἀκούω*  
 heaven, *οὐρανός*  
 heavy, *βαρύς* (3)  
 heavy-armed soldier, *ὀπλίτης*  
 Hellas, *Ἑλλάς*, *-άδος*, *ἡ*  
 Hellespont, *Ἑλλήσποντος*  
 Hellespontian, *Ἑλλησποντιακός* (3)  
 height, *ἄκρον*  
 help, *ὠφελέω*  
 hide, *ἐπι-κρύπτω*  
 high, *ὕψηλός* (3)

height, ὕψος, ὕψους, τό  
 hire, μισθόω  
 hired-man, θής, θητός, δ  
 hired soldier, μισθοφόρος, ξένος  
 historian, ιστοριογράφος  
 history, ιστορίᾱ  
 hold, ἔχω  
 homeward, οἰκαδε  
 honey, μέλι, -ιτος, τό  
 honor, τιμή, τιμάω  
 hope, ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, ἐλπίζω  
 hoplite, ὀπλίτης  
 horn, κέρας, κέρατος and κέρως, τό  
 horse, ἵππος  
 horseman, ἵππεύς, -έως, δ  
 hostile, πολέμιος (3)  
 house, οἰκίᾱ, οἶκος  
 how? πῶς;  
 however, μέντοι  
 how great? how much? πόσος; (3)  
 how many? πόσοι; (3)  
 hunger, λιμός  
 hunt, θηρεύω

I

I, ἐγώ  
 if, ἐάν, w. subj.; εἰ, w. indic. and  
 opt.  
 Iliad, Ἰλιάς, -άδος, ἡ  
 illegality, ἀνόμημα, -ατος, τό  
 image, εἰκών, -ονος, ἡ  
 immortal, ἀθάνατος (2)  
 in, ἐν, w. dat.  
 inedited, ἀνέκδοτος (2)  
 in friendly manner, φιλικῶς  
 inhabit, εἰκέω, ἐν-οικέω  
 inhabited, οἰκούμενος (3)  
 ink, μέλαν, -ατος, τό  
 in order that, ἵνα, w. subj. (opt.),  
 sometimes ὅπως, w. fut. indic.  
 in power of, often ἐπί, w. dat.

insolence, ὕβρις  
 instead of, ἀντί, w. gen.  
 intend, μέλλω, w. infin.  
 interpreter, ἐρμηνεύς, -έως, δ  
 into, εἰς, w. acc.  
 invade, εἰσ-βάλλω  
 Ionian, Ἰόνιος (3)  
 is possible, ἔστι  
 island, νῆσος, ἡ  
 Issi or Issus, Ἴσσοι  
 Ithaca, Ἰθάκη

J

John, Ἰωάννης  
 join, ζεύγνυμι  
 judge, κριτής  
 judgment(decision), κρίσις, -εως, η  
 judgment (opinion), γνώμη  
 just, δίκαιος (3)  
 justly, δικαίως

K

keep, τηρέω  
 keeper, φύλαξ, -ακος, δ  
 kill, ἀπο-κτείνω  
 king, βασιλεύς  
 kingdom, βασιλείᾱ  
 knee, γόνυ, -ατος, τό  
 know, ἐπίσταμαι, οἶδα

L

ladder, κλίμαξ, -ακος, ἡ  
 lake, λίμνη  
 last, τελευταῖος (3), ὅστατος (3)  
 later, ὅστερος (3)  
 law, νόμος  
 lay away, ἀπο-τίθημι  
 lead, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι (dep.)  
 lead out, ἐξ-άγω  
 lead through, δι-άγω  
 learn, μαθαίνω



learner, μαθητής  
 learn to know, γιγνώσκειν  
 leave, λείπω  
 left, ἔλειπον, 2 aor. λείπω  
 leisure, σχολή  
 length, μῆκος, -ους, τό  
 Leonidas, Λεωνίδας  
 lesson, μάθημα, -ατος, τό  
 Leto, Λητώ, Λητούς, ἡ  
 letter (of alphabet), γράμμα, -ατος, τό  
 letter (epistle), ἐπιστολή  
 libation, σπονδή  
 liberty, ἐλευθερίᾱ  
 lie, κεῖμαι (dep.)  
 life, βίος, ψυχή (vital principle)  
 light, ἐλαφρός (3), κοῦφος (3)  
 light-armed soldier, πελταστής  
 limb, μέλος, -ους, τό  
 live, ζάω  
 liver, ἥπαρ, -ατος, τό  
 loaf of bread, ἄρτος  
 long, μακρός (3)  
 loose, λύω  
 Lord, Κύριος, N. T. word  
 love, φιλέω  
 love of money, φιλαργυρίᾱ  
 lower world, ᾠδης  
 Lycurgus, Λυκούργος  
 Lydia, Λυδία

## M

Maeander, Μαίανδρος  
 maintain, τρέφω  
 maintenance, τροφή  
 make, ποιέω  
 make evident, δηλόω  
 make expedition, στρατεύομαι  
 make to revolt (lit. rouse up),  
 ἀνίστημι  
 make truce, σπονδὰς ποιοῦμαι

male, ἄρρην (2)  
 man, ἀνὴρ, -δρός (Lat. *vir*), ἄνθρω-  
 πος (Lat. *homo*)  
 manly, ἀνδρείος (3)  
 manifest, δείκνυμαι (midd.)  
 mansion, μονή  
 many, πολλοί (3)  
 march (of general), ἐξ-ελαύνω  
 march (of soldiers), πορεύομαι  
 march towards, προσ-ελαύνω  
 master, δεσπότης  
 master, get mastery of, κρατίω,  
 w. gen.  
 measure, μέτρον  
 member, μέλος, -ους, τό  
 message, ἀγγελία  
 messenger, ἄγγελος  
 metropolitan, μητροπολίτης  
 middle, μέσος (3)  
 middle (substantive), μέσον  
 might, ἰσχύς, ὕος, ἡ  
 Milētus, Μίλητος, ἡ  
 milk, γάλα, -κτος, τό  
 Miltiades, Μιλτιάδης  
 mina, μνᾶ  
 mind, νοῦς  
 mix, μίγνυμι  
 mixing-bowl, κρατήρ, ἥρος, ὁ  
 money, χρήματα, pl. of χρήμα  
 monster, τέρας, -ατος, τό  
 month, μήν, μηνός, ὁ  
 more, πλείων (2), adj., μᾶλλον, adv.  
 more—than, μᾶλλον—ἢ  
 more clearly, σαφέστερον  
 more gladly, ἡδίων  
 more quickly, θᾶπτον  
 more truly, ἀληθέστερον  
 more wisely, σοφώτερον  
 moor, ὀρμέω  
 mother, μήτηρ, -ρός  
 mouth, στόμα, -ατος, τό

most, πλεῖστος (3), adj., μάλιστα,  
adv.

most clearly, σαφέστατα

most gladly, ἡδιστα

most quickly, τάχιστα

most truly, ἀληθέστατα

most wisely, σοφώτατα

mountain, ὄρος, ὄρους, τό

much, πολὺς (3)

muse, μουσα

must, δεῖ, ἀνάγκη ἐστίν

my, ἐμός (3)

myself (of myself), ἐμαυτοῦ

## N

name, ὄνομα, -ατος, τό

near, ἐγγύς, w. gen.

near, παρά, w. dat.

necessary (is necessary), δεῖ

necessity, ἀνάγκη

neither—nor, οὔτε—οὔτε

net, δίκτυον

never, οὔποτε, μήποτε

new, νέος (3)

Nicomedia, Νικομήδεια

night, νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ

nine, ἐννέα

ninth, ἔννατος (3)

no, no one, οὐδεὶς (3)

no longer, οὐκέτι

not, οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ and μή

not even, οὐδέ

nothing, no thing, οὐδέν

notice, κατα-νοέω

nourish, τρέφω

now, δῆ

number, ἀριθμός

## O

O, ὦ

oath, ὅρκος

obey, πείθομαι (inidd.)

observe, τηρέω

Odysseus, Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως

Odyssey, Ὀδυσσεΐα

of every sort, παντοῖος (3)

often, πολλάκις

old, παλαιός (3)

old age, γῆρας, γήρως, τό

older, oldest, πρεσβύτερος (3),

πρεσβύτατος (3)

old man, γέρον, -οντος

old woman, γραῦς, γράως, ἡ

one, εἷς, μία, ἓν

only, μόνον

opinion, γνώμη

opposite, καταντιπέρας, w. gen.

or, ἢ

orator, ῥήτωρ, -ορος, ὁ

order, τάξις, -εως, ἡ

orient, ἀνατολή

other, ἄλλος (3)

our, ἡμέτερος (3)

out of, ἐκ, ἐξ

out of sight, ἀφανής (2)

overtake, κατα-λαμβάνω

ox, βοῦς, βοός, ὁ

## P

palace, βασιλεία, ntr. pl.

parasang, παρασάγγης

parent, γονεύς, -έως

park, παράδεισος

part, μέρος, -ους, τό

Parthenon, Παρθενών, -ῶνος, ὁ

Parysatis, Παρύσατις, -ιδος

Pasion, Πασίων, -ωνος, ὁ

pass along, παρ-έρχομαι

pass through, δι-άγω

passion, θυμός

Paul, Παῦλος

pay, μισθός

Χριστιανός (3), *Christian*  
 χρόνος, *time*  
 χρυσίον, *gold coin, money*  
 χρῆς, *gold*  
 χώρα, *country*

## Ψ

Ψάρος, *Parus*  
 ψεύδης (2), *false*  
 ψεύδωμι (dep.), *lie*

ψεύδω, ψεύδωμι, *λέ, lie*  
 ψυχή, (1) *life*, (2) *soul*

## Ω

Ω, *O!*  
 ὧς, *thus (as follows)*  
 ὧρ, *hour*  
 ὡς (w. persons only), *to*  
 ὡς, *as*  
 ὥστε, *so that, comm. w. infin.*

## WORDS OMITTED IN GREEK VOCABULARY.

ἀθρησία, *despondency*  
 ἀποβάλλω, *throw away*  
 βαθύς (3), *deep*  
 δεξιός (3), *right*  
 εἶμι, *go*  
 ἑπομαι (dep.), *follow*  
 Θεμιστοκλῆς, -κλεῦς, *Themistocles*  
 Ἰησοῦς, *Jesus*

ναύαρχος, *ship-commander*  
 ὀφθαλμός, *eye*  
 πάλω, *again, back*  
 πρό-εμι, *go forward*  
 προσ-έρχομαι, *come or go toward*  
 τύχη, *chance, Fortune*  
 υπέρ, *in behalf of*  
 Χριστός, *Christ*

## ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

---

### A

able, am able, *δύναμαι* (dep.)  
 about, *ἀμφί*, w. acc.; am about to, *μέλλω*  
*Abrocomas*, *Ἀβροκόμας*  
*Abūdus*, *Ἀβῦδος*  
 accede to, *προσ-τίθεμαι* (midd.), w. dat.  
 accomplish, *κατα-πράττω*  
 Achaian, *Ἀχαιός* (3)  
 Achilles, Achilleus, *Ἀχιλλεύς*, -έως  
 acorn, *βάλανος*, ἡ  
 acquire, *κτάομαι* (dep.)  
 across, *διά*, w. gen.  
 action, act, *πρᾶξις*, -εως, ἡ  
 add to, *προστίθημι*, w. dat.  
 admire, *ἀγαμαι* (dep.), *θαυμάζω*  
 advance, *ἐξ-ελαύνω*, *πορεύομαι*  
 advise, *συμ-βουλεύω*  
 after, *μετά*, w. acc.  
 after Easter, *μετὰ τὸ Πάσχα*  
 again, *ἄ*  
 against, *ἐπί*, w. acc.  
 age, *αἰών*, -ῶνος, ὁ  
 agree to, *συν-τίθεμαι* (midd.)  
 aid, *βοήθεια*  
 aid, *ὠφελέω*, *ὑπ-άρχω*

all, *πᾶς* (3)  
 alone, *μόνος* (3)  
 already, *ἤδη*  
 altogether, *παντάπῃσι*  
 always, *ἀεί*  
 am, *εἰμί*  
 ambassador, *πρεσβευτής* in sing., pl. *πρέσβεις*, -ων  
 America, *Ἀμερική*  
 amid, *μετά*, prep. w. gen. and dat.  
 among, *ἐν*, w. dat.  
 ancestor, *πρόγονος*  
 ancient, *παλαιός* (3)  
 anciently, *παλαιόν*  
 and, *καί*  
 Andrew, *Ἀνδρέας*  
 announce, *ἀγγέλλω*  
 answer, *ἀπο-κρίνομαι* (dep.)  
 anticipate, *φθάνω*  
 any, *τις*, *τι*  
 Apollo, *Ἀπόλλων*, -ωνος  
 apostle, *ἀπόστολος*  
 appear, *φαίνομαι* (midd.)  
 appearance, *εἶδος*, -ους, τό  
 appoint, *ἀπο-δείκνυμι*  
 apprehend, *συν-λαμβάνω*  
 Arcadia, *Ἀρκαδίᾱ*

Arcadian, Ἀρκάς, -άδος, ὁ  
 archer, τοξότης  
 Archimandrite, Ἀρχιμανδρίτης  
 Ares, Ἄρης, -εως  
 Ariæus, Ἀριαῖος  
 arm, ὄπλον  
 arms, ὄπλα  
 armament, στόλος  
 army, στρατιά, στρατός, στράτευμα, -ατος, τό  
 arrangement, τάξις, -εως, ἡ  
 arrest, συλ-λαμβάνω  
 arrive, ἀφ-ικνέομαι (dep.)  
 arrow, βιστός  
 art, τέχνη  
 Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης  
 Artemis, Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, ἡ  
 ascent, ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ  
 Asia, Ἀσία  
 ask, ἐρωτάω  
 ask after, ζητέω  
 ask from, ἐξ-αιτέω  
 as much as, as many as, ὅσος, ὅσοι (3)  
 assembly, ἐκκλησίᾳ  
 Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος (3)  
 Athena, Ἀθηνᾶ  
 Athens, Ἀθῆναι  
 athlete, ἀθλητής  
 at home, οἶκοι  
 attend to, προσ-έχω, w. dat.  
 author, συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ  
 await, περι-μένω

## B

Babylon, Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ὁ  
 bad, κακός (3)  
 banish, ἐκ-βάλλω  
 barbarian, βάρβαρος  
 battle, μάχη  
 be, εἰμί

be able, δύναμαι (dep.)  
 be about to, μέλλω  
 be at hand, πάρ-ειμι  
 be away, ἔπ-ειμι  
 be badly treated, κακῶς πάσχω  
 be beaten, ἡττάομαι  
 be burdened at, ἔχθομαι, w. gen. of cause  
 be friendly, εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω  
 be glad, ἡδομαι  
 be grateful, χάριν οἶδα  
 be present, πάρεμι  
 be reconciled, passive of συν-αλλάττω  
 be silent, σιωπάω  
 be sick, ἀσθενέω  
 be treated by any one, πάσχω ὑπό τινος  
 be troubled at, ἔχθομαι, w. gen. of cause  
 be upon, ἔπ-ειμι  
 be victorious, νικάω  
 be well treated, εὖ πάσχω  
 be willing, ἐθέλω  
 bear, φέρω  
 beast-of-burden, ὑποζύγιον  
 beautiful, καλός (3)  
 beauty, κάλλος, -ους, τό  
 because of, ἔνεκα, w. gen., διά, w. acc.  
 become, γίγνομαι  
 become acquainted, συγ-γίγνομαι  
 become superior, περι-γίγνομαι  
 before, πρό, w. gen.  
 before face of, πρός, w. gen.  
 beget, τίκτω  
 begin, ἄρχω, governs gen.  
 beginning, ἀρχή  
 being, ὢν, pres. ptc. εἰμί  
 being able, δυνάμενος, pres. ptc. (3)  
 benefit, δνίνημι

besiege, πολιορκέω  
 betray, προ-δίδωμι  
 beyond, πέραν, w. gen.  
 bird, ὄρνις, -ιθος, ὁ and ἡ  
 bitter, πικρός (3)  
 black, μέλας (3)  
 blessed, μάκαρ (1), μακάριος (3)  
 blood, αἷμα, -ατος, τό  
 boat, transport, πλοῖον  
 body, σῶμα, -ατος, τό  
 Boeotia, Βοιωτία  
 Boeotian, Βοιωτίας (3)  
 bone, ὀστούν  
 book, βιβλίον  
 both, ἀμφότερος (3)  
 both—and, τε—καί, καί—καί  
 bow, τόξον  
 Bowman, τοξότης  
 boy, παῖς, -δός, ὁ  
 bread, ἄρτος  
 breadth, εὖρος, -ους, τό  
 break, ῥήγνυμι, κλάω  
 bridge, γέφυρα  
 bring forth, beget, τίκτω  
 broad, εὐρύς (3)  
 brother, ἀδελφός  
 bull, ταῦρος  
 burden, φορτίον  
 but, ἀλλά (ἀλλ'), δέ  
 but not, οὐδέ  
 by (of agent), ὑπό, w. gen.

C

Caesar, Καῖσαρ, -αρος  
 call, καλέω (summon), λέγω  
 (name)  
 Calypso, Καλυψώ, οὗς, ἡ  
 came, I came, ἦλθον, 2 aor.  
 camp, στρατόπεδον  
 can, δύναμαι (dep.)  
 captain, λοχαγός

care for, ἐπι-μελέομαι, w. gen.  
 cargo, φορτίον  
 carry, φέρω, πορεύω  
 cast out, ἐκ-βάλλω  
 Castölus, Καστωλός  
 cease, παύομαι (midd.), w. gen.  
 center, μέσον  
 Cerberus, Κέρβερος  
 chain, δεσμός  
 Chalus, Χάλος  
 chance, τυγχάνω  
 change, ἀλλάττω  
 charge (on enemy), ἔεμαι (midd.)  
 Chirisophus, Χειρίσοφος  
 Chersonesus, Χερρόνησος, ἡ  
 child, τέκνον, παῖς, -δός  
 Christ, Χριστός  
 Christian, Χριστιανός  
 church, ἐκκλησίᾳ  
 Cilicia, Κιλικία  
 Cilician (woman), Κίλισσα  
 Cimon, Κίμων, -ωνος  
 citizen, πολίτης  
 city, πόλις, -εως, ἡ, ἄστυ, -εως, τό  
 claim, ἀξιόω  
 clear, σαφής (2)  
 clearly, σαφῶς  
 cloud, νεφέλη  
 Colossae, Κολοσσαί  
 collect, ἀθροίζω, συλ-λέγω  
 come, ἔκω, ἔρχομαι, ἀφ-ικνέομαι  
 come to be, γίγνομαι (dep.)  
 come through, δι-έρχομαι  
 come together, συν-έρχομαι  
 command, κελεύω  
 commonwealth, πολιτεία  
 companion, ἐταῖρος  
 competent, ἱκανός (3)  
 complete, τελέω  
 conceal, ἐπι-κρύπτω  
 conquer, νικάω

consider, ἡγέομαι  
 contest, ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ, ἄθλος  
 Constantinople, Κωνσταντινού-  
 πολις, -εως, ἡ  
 constitution, πολιτεία  
 consult with, συμ-βουλεύομαι  
 (midd.)  
 contest, ἀθλος, ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ  
 contribute, συμ-βάλλομαι (midd.)  
 co-operate, συμ-πράττω  
 council, counsel, βουλή  
 counsel, βουλεύω  
 countenance, ὄψις, -εως, ἡ  
 country, χώρα (land), πατρίς,  
 -ίς, ἡ (fatherland)  
 courage, ἀνδρεία  
 courageous, ἀνδρεῖος (3)  
 covetousness, φιλαργυρία  
 cow, βοῦς, βοός, ἡ  
 cowardly, κακός (3)  
 Cretan, Κρής, -τός, ὁ  
 Croesus, Κροῖσος  
 crop, καρπός  
 cross, διαβαίνω  
 crossing, διάβασις, -εως, ἡ  
 cube, κύβος  
 cubit, πῆχυς, εως, ὁ  
 custom, νόμος  
 cut down, κατα-κόπτω  
 Cyclops, Κύκλωψ, -ωπος, ὁ  
 Cydnus, Κύδνος  
 Cyrus, Κύρος

## D

danger, κίνδυνος  
 Dardanelles, Ἑλλησποντος  
 daric, δαρεικός  
 Darius, Δαρεῖος  
 date, βάλανος, ἡ  
 daughter, θυγατήρ, -τρός, ἡ  
 day, ἡμέρα

daybreak, ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
 day's march, σταθμός  
 dead, νεκρός (3 and subst.)  
 dear, φίλος (3)  
 death, θάνατος  
 declare opinion, ἀπο-φαίνομαι  
 γνώμην  
 dedicate, ἀνα-τίθημι  
 deem worthy, ἀξιόω  
 deep, βαθύς (3)  
 deity, δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ  
 deliberate, βουλεύομαι  
 Delphi, Δελφοί, pl. only  
 demagogue, δημαγωγός  
 deposit, κατα-τίθημι  
 descent, κατάβασις, εως, ἡ  
 describe, συγ-γράφω  
 desert, ἀπο-λείπω  
 desire, ἵεμαι (midd.), w. gen.  
 destroy, ὀλλύμι  
 dice, κύβοι  
 die (cube), κύβος  
 dinner, δείπνον  
 disciple, μαθητής  
 discreet, σώφρων (2)  
 disgrace, ἀτιμάζω  
 disgracefully, αἰσχρῶς  
 dismiss, ἀπο-πέμπω  
 distinguish, κρίνω  
 distribute, δια-δίδωμι  
 distrust, ἀπιστέω  
 divinity, δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ  
 do, ποίεω  
 do completely, κατα-πράττω  
 doctrine, διδαχή  
 dogma, δόγμα, -ατος, τό  
 down, κάτω  
 dragon, δράκων, -οντος, ὁ  
 drink, ποτόν  
 drive into exile, ἐκ-βάλλω  
 dwell in, οἰκέω and ἐν-οικέω

## E

each, ἑκαστος (3), pred. position  
 ear, οὖς, ὠτός, τό  
 earth, γῆ  
 east, ἀνατολή  
 easy, ῥάδιος (3)  
 edit, ἐκ-δίδωμι  
 education, παιδεία  
 eight, ὀκτώ  
 eighth, ὀγδοος (3)  
 empty, ἐκ-δίδωμι  
 end, τελευτή, τέλος, -ους, τό  
 end a war, κατα-λύω πόλεμον  
 end of, at, ἄκρος (3)  
 enemy (public), πολέμιος, comm.  
 pl.  
 enemy (personal), ἐχθρός  
 England, Ἀγγλία  
 enslave, δουλῶ  
 Ephesian, Ἐφεσίος (3)  
 Eriphyle, Ἐριφύλη  
 escape notice, λανθάνω  
 establish, καθ-ίστημι  
 Ethiopian, Αἰθίοψ, -οπος  
 Europe, Εὐρώπη  
 Euxine, Εὐξείνιος (2)  
 ever, αἰεί  
 everywhere, πανταχοῦ  
 evil, κακόν  
 exactly, ἀκριβῶς  
 exceedingly, λίαν  
 except, ἄνευ, prep. w. gen.  
 except, unless, εἰ μή, conj.  
 exercise, γυμνάζω  
 exists, ἔστι  
 export, ἐξ-άγω  
 extreme, ἑσχατος (3)

## F

faction, στάσις, -εως, ἡ  
 faithful, πιστός (3)  
 fall, πίπτω

fall out of (= be banished), ἐκ-  
 πίπτω

false, ψευδής (2)  
 falsehood, ψεῦδος, -ους, τό  
 famine, λιμός  
 farmer, γεωργός  
 fat, πίων (2)  
 father, πατήρ, -ρός  
 fatherland, πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ  
 fear, φόβος  
 fear, be afraid, φοβέομαι  
 feathered, πτερόεις (3)  
 feel gratitude, χάριν οἶδα  
 feeling, θῦμός  
 female, θήλυς (3)  
 fifth, πέμπτος (3)  
 fight, μάχομαι  
 fill, πίμπλημι  
 find, εὕρισκω  
 finger, δάκτυλος  
 finish, τελευτάω  
 first, πρῶτος (3)  
 fish, ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ  
 five, πέντε  
 five hundred, πεντακόσιοι (3)  
 flee, φεύγω  
 flight, φυγή  
 float, πλέω  
 flow, ῥέω  
 follow, ἔπομαι, w. dat.  
 food, σῖτος, pl. σῖτα  
 foot, πούς, ποδός, ὁ  
 for, γάρ  
 force, δύναμις, -εως, ἡ  
 four, τέσσαρες (2)  
 fourth, τέταρτος (3)  
 fountain, κρήνη  
 fowl, ὄρνις, -ιθος, ὁ and ἡ  
 free, ἐλεύθερος (3)  
 freedom, ἐλευθερία  
 friend, φίλος  
 friendly, φιλίος (3)





# POPULAR GREEK METHODS.

---

## ADAMS'S GREEK PREPOSITIONS.

By F. A. ADAMS, Ph.D. 12mo, cloth. 131 pages . 60 cents

The Greek prepositions studied from their original meanings as designations of space.

## ARNOLD'S FIRST GREEK BOOK.

By THOS. K. ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo, cloth. 297 pages, 87 cents

On the same plan as Arnold's First Latin Book. The author has prepared with great care, in both Greek and English, such exercises as serve to illustrate those portions of grammar which are needful at the outset.

## ARNOLD'S GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo, cloth. 237 pages . \$1.05

The object of this book is to enable the student, as soon as he can decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences after given examples with given words.

## BOISE'S EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE.

By JAS. R. BOISE. 12mo, cloth. 185 pages . . \$1.05

These exercises were prepared simply as an accompaniment to the first book of the Anabasis.

## COY'S GREEK FOR BEGINNERS.

By EDWARD G. COY, M.A. 12mo, cloth. 152 pages . \$1.00

A companion book to Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar and an introduction to Coy's First Reader or Xenophon's Anabasis.

## COY'S FIRST GREEK READER.

By EDWARD G. COY, M.A. 12mo, cloth. 150 pages. 84 cents

Designed as an introduction to Xenophon's Anabasis. The work contains easy selections adapted from Xenophon and Thucydides, carefully graded, with notes and exercises adapted to both Hadley-Allen's and Goodwin's Greek Grammars.

## CROSBY'S GREEK GRAMMAR.

By A. CROSBY. 12mo, cloth. 477 pages . . \$1.40

Designed for schools and colleges. This book is simple enough to be put in the hands of the beginner, and yet sufficiently scientific and complete to accompany him through his whole course.

## HADLEY'S GREEK GRAMMAR.

Revised, and in part rewritten, by FREDERIC DE FOREST ALLEN,  
Professor in Harvard College. 12mo . . . \$1.50

This grammar not only presents the latest and best results of Greek studies, but also treats the language in the light received from comparative philology.

## HARKNESS'S FIRST GREEK BOOK.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.

12mo, cloth. 276 pages . . . \$1.05

Designed especially to accompany Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar, with references also to Goodwin's and Crosby's Grammars.

POPULAR GREEK METHODS—CONTINUED.

---

**HARPER'S INDUCTIVE GREEK METHOD.**

By Prof. WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., Yale University, and WILLIAM E. WATERS, Ph.D., Cincinnati, Ohio . . . . . \$1.00

This book corresponds to Harper and Burgess's Inductive Latin Method. It is intended to be a guide and help to the pupil in beginning the study of the Greek language.

**KEEP'S GREEK LESSONS.**

By ROBERT P. KEEP, Ph.D. 12mo, cloth. 257 pages . \$1.20

Prepared to accompany Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar. It was with the design of making the path to the acquaintance with the new Hadley clear, sure, and not unnecessarily difficult, that the preparation of these Lessons was undertaken.

**KENDRICK'S GREEK OLLENDORFF.**

By A. C. KENDRICK. 12mo, cloth. 371 pages . \$1.22

A progressive exhibition of the principles of Greek Grammar, designed for beginners in Greek and as a book of exercises for academies and colleges.

**KÜHNER'S GREEK GRAMMAR.**

By RALPH KÜHNER. Translated from the German by B. B. EDWARDS and S. H. TAYLOR. 8vo, cloth. 620 pages, \$1.40

For the use of high schools and colleges. A valuable book of reference founded upon the work of one of the highest German authorities.

**SCARBOROUGH'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.**

By WM. S. SCARBOROUGH, A.M.

12mo, cloth. 147 pages . . . . . 90 cents

A two-term text-book, with copious notes and references to the Grammars of Goodwin and Hadley, and an adequate vocabulary.

**SILBER'S PROGRESSIVE LESSONS IN GREEK.**

By WM. B. SILBER, A.M. 12mo, cloth. 79 pages . 57 cents

A course of progressive lessons in Greek, together with notes and frequent references to the grammars of Sophocles, Hadley, and Crosby.

**WHITON'S THREE MONTHS' PREPARATION FOR READING XENOPHON.**

By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Ph.D., and MARY BARTLETT WHITON, A.B. 12mo, cloth. 94 pages . . . . . 48 cents

Adapted for use in connection with Hadley and Allen's or Goodwin's Grammars.

**WINCHELL'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN GREEK SYNTAX.**

By S. R. WINCHELL, A.M. 12mo, cloth. 121 pages, 54 cents

Designed to accompany the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis. A series of lessons on Attic Greek syntax, designed to follow about one year's study of the etymology of the language.

---

*Copies of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,**

NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO.  
[\*90]













